

# Plan of Salvation Insights



Nate Richardson

[RichardsonStudies.com](http://RichardsonStudies.com)

9.4.23

# Contents

<b>PRE-MORALITY</b>	6
Introduction to the Plan of Salvation	7
Why do we Love our Father in Heaven?	7
I Believe: Part 1 Overview	7
I Believe: Part 2 Digging a Bit Deeper	8
I Believe: Part 3: Conclusions	10
What Did Our Spirits Look Like Before Coming Here, And What Will We Look Like After Being Here?	14
Pre-Mortality – Teachings of the Prophets	16
Pre-Existence by Ogden Kraut – Book Highlights	17
A Nine Part Saga of Life & Eternity	21
Emulating the Godhead in the Pre-Mortal, Mortal, & Post-Mortal Existence: An Allegory of The Plan of Salvation in the 3 Phases of Life & The 3 Kingdoms of Glory	21
Emulating the Godhead: ACCOMPANYING CHART (fix format)	26
The Holy Ghost – Teachings of the Prophets	29
The Holy Ghost is Not Female	30
No, The Holy Ghost Didn't Used to Have A Body	30
Scriptural Serpent Symbol : Christs Truth & Satan's Imitation	31
A Poem Contemplating Eternity	31
Straining at Particles of Light: Premortal Life and the Mansions of Memory by Terryl Givens – Lecture Highlights	32
We Still Have Our Spirit Bodies (It's Not a Separate Thing)	34
Life circumstances: some elected, some assigned	34
A Vision Given to Mosiah Hancock (about 1855)	34
<b>FALL OF ADAM &amp; SALVATION IN CHRIST</b>	38
The Laws of Justice and Mercy: Redemption of Past Sins, & The Requirement to Develop Godly Attributes	39
The Number 7	39
Theory on The Eden Transgression: Who Gave Instruction	39
Theory on Light from Dark	39
The Fall of Adam and the Natural Man - Hyrum Andrus Lecture Highlights (PoGP L5)	39
Youth Repentance & The Doctrine of Christ in the D&C - Hyrum Andrus Lecture Highlights	42
The Divine Conception of Christ	43
Meaning of the Atonement – Cleon Skousen Lecture Highlights	44
God Has No Opposite!	45
The Atonement of Jesus Christ: Teachings of the Prophets	45
Oneness of God, Fall of Adam, & Atonement of Christ	47
Grace	48
Why We Need a Savior: God's Plan vs. Lucifer's Tyranny by Elder D. Todd Christofferson	49
Christ Symbols in Animal Sacrifice of the Law of Moses	50
Faith Precedes the Miracle by Spencer W. Kimball – Book Notes	51

The Mortal Messiah (all 4 volumes) by Bruce R. McConkie – Book Notes .....	74
The Miracle of Forgiveness by Spencer W. Kimball – Book Notes <b>move to faith bk?</b> <b>unfinished</b> .....	107
Regent .....	116
Jesus’ Youth etc. ....	116
<b>AFTER LIFE &amp; RESURRECTION</b> .....	117
Resurrection Meme by Mormonr.org .....	118
Life Everlasting by Duane S Crowther – Book Preview - <b>pending</b> .....	118
Resurrection Chart from Doctrines of the Gospel Manual Ch. 32 .....	119
Are There Perpetual Chances For Exaltation After This Life? NO .....	121
Delicate Friendships to Be Restored .....	121
The Millennium & Heaven: Eternal Sunday? Boring? .....	121
Why Aren’t We “Raptured” Upon Conversion?.....	122
Longing to Belong by Bruce Hafen – Lecture Highlights .....	122
Wickedness is Happiness, Sometimes? The Justice of God and the Nature of the Soul.....	124
Point-Blank Accountability .....	125
Literal (Corporal) Resurrection of Christ & All.....	126
Pre-Mortality, Corporal Resurrection, & Eternal Family - A letter to a friend.....	131
The 7 Deadly Heresies by Elder Bruce R McConkie – Lecture Highlights.....	134
Creation Fall Atonement Narrative.....	134
Can’t Advance Kingdoms Once Assigned – Quotes .....	135
Does A Person's Body Need To Leave It's Grave For A Resurrection To Occur? Yes .....	136
Analogy of Sleep as a Fall, a Death .....	137
Plan of Salvation Study Resources .....	137
Who Judges.....	137
Translations of Facsimile 3 .....	137
A Study Guide to the Facsimiles of the Book of Abraham by Allen J Fletcher – Book Notes <b>– look into permissions</b> .....	138
<b>ASSORTED PLAN OF SALVATION STUDIES</b> .....	157
Joshua Erickson on God’s Continuous Covenant .....	158





## PRE-MORALITY



Nate Richardson  
RichardsonStudies.com

## Introduction to the Plan of Salvation

The scriptures say that a study of the Plan of Salvation is the 1<sup>st</sup> thing to learn, even before the commandments. God's Plan motivates us to repent of our sins, and become saints. The Plan of Salvation is a journal of pre-mortal life, all the way through the various stages of existence until the station of God himself. God has passed through a similar journey to which we are now passing. As his children, we do what He did, and hope to someday be as He is. Jesus Christ is the central figure of God's plan as the chosen Savior of the human race. This however does not eliminate our individual responsibility, but directs and enlivens it. Enjoy studying with me the roles of faith and works, the attributes of God and man, the central role of the family, and many other exciting components of God's happy plan for us.

"When we understand the character of God, and know how to come to Him, he begins to unfold the heavens to us, and to tell us all about it. When we are ready to come to him, he is ready to come to us." -Joseph Smith

"How difficult it is to teach the natural man, who comprehends nothing more than that which he sees with the natural eye! . . . Talk to him about angels, heavens, God, immortality, and eternal lives, and it is like sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal to his ears; it has no music to him; there is nothing in it that charms his senses, soothes his feelings, attracts his attention, or engages his affections, in the least." (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses (18 December 1859) 1:2; see also Discourses of Brigham Young (Salt Lake City: Deseret Book, 1954), 260.)

"... Men are in the habit, when the truth is exhibited by the servants of God, of saying, All is mystery; they have spoken in parables, and, therefore, are not to be understood. It is true they have eyes to see, and see not, but none are so blind as those who will not see; and, although the Savior spoke this to such characters, yet unto His disciples he expounded it plainly; and we have reason to be truly humble before the God of our fathers, that He hath left these things on record for us, so plain, that notwithstanding the exertions and combined influence of the priests of Baal, they have not power to blind our eyes, and darken our understanding, if we will but open our eyes, and read with candor, for a moment." (Joseph Smith, History of the Church, 2:265–66; from a letter from Joseph Smith to the elders of the Church, Dec. 1835, Kirtland, Ohio, published in Messenger and Advocate, Dec. 1835, pp. 225–26.)

([https://www.lds.org/manual/teachings-joseph-smith/chapter-25?lang=eng#7-36481\\_000\\_029](https://www.lds.org/manual/teachings-joseph-smith/chapter-25?lang=eng#7-36481_000_029))(Chapter 25: Truths from the Savior's Parables in Matthew 13, Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith, (2011), 292–305)



## Why do we Love our Father in Heaven?

Children (as little children) have an innocent faith in their fathers. Just because he is Dad! He always has and always will ensure that our needs are met. He provides for our wants and needs. Just as children can look to their parents to provide for them, so can we look to God, and He has cared for us from the beginning.

We trust him because he is our father, not because he did some sort of an atonement.

## I Believe: Part 1 Overview

I believe the human race is watched over by a divine all-powerful corporal being dwelling on his home planet. I believe that this man, our **Father in Heaven**, is perfectly compassionate and wise, and possesses all joy, knowledge, and power.



I believe we **lived with our Father in Heaven** for a very long time as intelligent spirits before we came to this earth. The intelligent self-possessed core of each individual person has always existed and will never cease to exist. When we came to earth we were given bodies, and though those bodies will expire for a season, they will return and be an essential component of life in eternity. Father has made arrangements for the entire human race to eventually overcome physical death in a universal reconstitution (resurrection) of our bodies, and that this will take place at a point in time in the near future. I believe that when the resurrection happens, we will continue as indefinitely, just like our Father in Heaven. I believe that intelligent corporal beings will have an intellect and the corporal body will be time, especially for those who have sought eternal laws.

I believe that our **Heavenly Father** is the prototype of the majesty of the mortal ministry of Heavenly Father's divine being named Jesus Christ, we see the exalted being, and that in the become like our Father in Heaven. I believe that our Father in Heaven created this earth to aid us in our quest to said quest entails the reception of bodies and experience therein. I believe that because of the benevolent government of our Father in Heaven, we are **free to make choices**. I believe that laws which govern the universe will dictate the consequences of those choices. I believe our Father in laws of the universe, and his compliance to these laws gives him maximum power and authority. I believe that our Father in Heaven has, in every generation, made us aware of these eternal laws. Father taught us eternal divine law face to face in the pre-mortal existence, and now teaches us through the operation of conscience, angels, and prophets.



I believe that our Father in Heaven has created an **immense number of planets**, many of which he has tailored, through specific astronomical arrangements, to suite human life. I believe these planets serve the same purpose to others of Father's children as our earth does for us. Father's desires for the complete progress of his children are universal and apply to each of us individually. I believe that our Father in Heaven has power over all his operations which affect us, and that he allows us to have the agency to make our own moral choices. Though eventual punishments and rewards will be allotted to us from Father for our choices, we are free to decide how we will act. In that punishments and rewards are not immediate in this life, our time on earth is a test.

I believe that to make mercy available to us, Father in Heaven directed his most advanced son, a divine being named **Jesus Christ**, to perform a vicarious atonement in our behalf. I believe that everyone, even those who feel weak unclean or simple, can become like our Father in Heaven as they sincerely attempt to make good choices today, and, when they understand and believe in the role of Jesus Christ, access his assistance.

I believe our **families are a prototype** of the lifestyle of our Father in Heaven, intended to exist indefinitely and grow exponentially unendingly. I believe that sexual relations outside of a marriage between a man & woman are not in keeping with the laws of life, and do not contribute to the progress of our species, nor the individual development of the individual eternal soul. Celibacy or ideological rejection of marriage and childbearing cut a person off from their potential to become like our heavenly parents.

I believe it is a moral obligation of all people to **seek and share knowledge**. Further we uphold proper government which protects people in their basic needs while allowing them freedom to enjoy growth in the direction of their choice. I believe it is the primary moral obligation of people, not government, to administer to the poor. I believe in voting for what you believe to be morally right to be put into law.

I believe that our Father in Heaven responds to the unprecedented evil in our world by sending us **unprecedented truth and power**. While I believe that these gifts of truth and power are embodied in and administered through The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, I believe the has good things in store for all people of good will everywhere, regardless of their beliefs. Further, I believe that to assist us in establishing world peace and personal progress, our Father in Heaven will against send Jesus Christ among us, this time to be the king of all earth for 1,000 years. I believe that this millennium of peace and good government will commence in the very near future.

## [I Believe: Part 2 Digging a Bit Deeper](#)

Now let's dig a bit deeper...

I believe that because of the benevolent government of our Father in Heaven, we are **free to make choices**. I believe that Father doesn't just want us to make good choices, he wants us to choose to make good choices. Choosing to do good rather than being forced to do good is the only way to become like Father. I believe that laws which govern the universe will dictate the consequences of our choices. I believe our Father in Heaven's laws are the same as the eternal laws of the universe, and his compliance to these laws gives him maximum power and authority.



As we learn to obey the laws of the universe, we like Father can **gain maximum power and authority** to govern our posterity like he governs his. Father made our spirits, and sent us to earth to get bodies. Some day when we have passed through our trials on earth, we too will be able to make spirits and send them to earths to learn and grow to become like ourselves.

There is **no beginning** of existence. Father in heaven has a father, and so on. Life continues forever and everyone including God himself has parents. Our Father in Heaven once dwelt on an earth like we are dwelling on. Father in Heaven has a wife, whom is our Mother in Heaven. They progressed together until they reached their current exalted status of Gods. The purpose of the human race isn't just to worship God, but is to become like God.

As the children of God, we can, through the help of Jesus Christ and each other, find our way to the blessings and **inheritance of God**. Jesus Christ found his way to Godhood by worshiping the Father. If we follow the example of Jesus Christ in word and deed, sincerely repenting when we fall short, we like Jesus Christ and like our heavenly parents, can become exalted Gods. We will then do what they do, namely benevolently rule our innumerable posterity on thrones in kingdoms of glory forever, helping our posterity to find joy like us.

Only in **abiding by the laws** of the universe can one find complete and never-ending joy. A God is someone who has found this fullness of joy by obedience to eternal law, and addition to complete joy, the office of power for good.

We are the **literal posterity of our Father** and goodness and their physical DNA are at the they are responsible for helping each of us beings to progress in spirits and bodies in ways For their absolutely essential role in our Heavenly Parents, and our earthly parents. Our life is so great, that we must worship God and the highest outcome of our eternal existence. estate. The first estate was our pre-earth life doing well in our first estate, we have glory. If have glory forever, and much more so than we **Before coming to earth**, some of Father's not come to earth to obtain bodies and continue tragically account for 1/3 of all of Father's named Lucifer. Lucifer was a beloved son of gain power which he had not earned, and to he was thrust out from the presence of God, and is the enemy of God who we call Satan.



**Mother in Heaven**, in that their spiritual core of our spirits and bodies, and in that intrinsically & independently intelligent similar to how our parents on earth help us. development, we will forever praise both our need for the help of God to make progress in rely upon his power and teachings to obtain The life we live now is called the second when we lived in the presence of God. For we do well in this our second estate, we will currently enjoy.

children rejected his teachings, and chose to on the path toward Godhood. Those children children. The leader of these fallen 1/3 is God, but because he unrighteously sought to use that power to force others to obey him,

**Satan will never receive a body**, and thus can never have a fullness of joy. The 2/3 of Father's children who chose to come to earth to be tested and tried in bodies will all die, but will regain their bodies in their perfect form in what is called the resurrection of the dead. After the resurrection of the dead, all people who lived on earth will have bodies again, and will never taste of death again. The Sons of Perdition will also partake of the second death (D&C 76).

Father's plan for us his children involved sending us to **earth to gain bodies**, obtaining character growth on earth through the difficulties of life including eventual death, the reception of bodies in the resurrection. Note that Father respects us his children and allowed us to choose whether we wanted to come to earth, and once on earth, Father allows us to do as we please. Father assists us by eventually blessing those who make good choices, and cursing those who make poor choices. These blessings and cursings are from Father, and are often manifest as natural consequences of our actions. Our heavenly parents weep for us when we make bad choices, because they know those choices will inevitably bring suffering. Remember, no one can break the rules of the universe, not even God. In order to further assist us, Father's **plan involved a Savior**. The Savior would be someone strong enough to take upon himself the natural punishments for the wrong doings committed by the human race. This intersession would make possible a loving learning environment with second chances, helping us to grow up without experiencing the full weight of consequences, similar to how an earthly parent removes many of the natural consequences of its young children by acting in their behalf.

**Jesus Christ, formerly known as Jehovah** before he was born on earth, was the only person qualified to satisfy this role of Savior of mankind. He chose to accept this calling. Because he chose to accept his calling for us, he suffered more than we can comprehend, and the laws of the universe were upheld. Justice was served. The natural results of imperfect compliance with the laws of the universe are pain and death of the body, and anguish of spirit. Lucifer was incapable of paying this price to redeem the human race from their fallen and incomplete condition, he was satisfied to allow the human race to remain in anguish and without bodies, and wanted to replace Father as ruler of all people.

**Lucifer erroneously thought that he could force everyone** to obey the laws of the universe, and thus save everyone to some degree, at least enough to make them his subjects forever in his kingdom. Forced charity is of the Devil, and doesn't help humans grow into their divine

potential. This of course would deny Father's children the opportunity to fully mature into the status of Gods themselves, as forced charity isn't charity at all, and the trait of charity is the bedrock of Godhood. Father's plan involved letting people chose for themselves whether they wanted to participate in his plan and come to earth, and his plan involved allowing them to grow from freedom to make mistakes while on earth. The Savior would give essential assistance to the human race in their quest for the divine and the fullness of joy that comes with it.

**When Jehovah was born on earth**, he assumed the title of Jesus Christ, which translated has the general meaning of anointed (chosen) savior. He then accomplished his intercession for the human race by both suffering anguish in his spirit, and both pain and death in his body. Because of his unique divine power similar to that of Father himself, which power he indeed received from Father, Jesus experienced the equivalent of tens of billions of deaths, tens of billions of pains, sorrows, and torments of every kind, satisfying the demands of justice for every person who chose to come to this earth and other earths inhabited by children of our Father.

**The 1/3 in pre-earth life** who rejected God's plan and chose not to come to earth but to rather elect Lucifer as their leader who could offer them a compromised but to them seemingly more realistic reward had this in common: they did not trust Jehovah's ability to redeem them, and they thought that life on earth would just be too hard overall, so why even bother trying when so much war death pain and sorrow would invariably be involved as a natural consequence of giving the human race the power to make their own choices, for good or evil.

**The 2/3 who chose to follow Father's plan** centered their hopes on Jehovah, that mighty firstborn son of God who had remarkably already obtained the character needed to save all of us his fellow kin. Because of the breathtakingly critical and massive role that Jehovah would assume in our salvation, he became a God to us, and in a large sense

of the word, he became a father to us. A third major assistant was made available to **Holy Ghost**. This man does not yet have a power he developed in the pre-earth existence. The bible and the book of Mormon are the all time. They show us that Jehovah (translated text) played a very close role with the human experience on the earth. In 1820, Father Jesus Christ appeared. Father told Joseph "this Holy Ghost and Jesus Christ always bear who upholds the just laws of the universe. We does he uphold justice and fairness, but he overcome the many hurdles in our path toward character like himself.

In this life, generally speaking, we do not see our quest for truth and righteousness. Every of having elected Jesus Christ in the pre-earth light is a power within us which comes from Another term for the light of Christ is

matter how little they have been formally exposed to the teachings of Jesus Christ by his authorized texts and messengers, can respond to conscience, or reject it. We all know deep down that we should treat each other fairly, and be merciful to each other whenever possible.

Couples of man and wife can combine their powers to become like our heavenly parents. The ultimate expression of power and authority can only operate when man and woman make an **eternal covenant of marriage** to act together in all things for good. We all die, but will come back to live with our bodies in the near future, and like Father and Mother in heaven, we will forever possess bodies of flesh and blood which we will use to have joy. Our spirits are incomplete without our bodies. I believe that our Father in Heaven has, in every generation, made us aware of the truths and laws of the universe through face to face personal demonstrations in the pre-earth existence, then again, a second time during this our mortal life through the operations of conscience, from divine angelic messengers sent from the presence of God (God meaning Father and Mother in heaven), and from the messages of prophets.



us, a man who would be known as the body, and as a spirit, uses the mighty to communicate to us truths from Father. most historically well-preserved books of as LORD in most English versions of the race throughout the history of human appeared to Joseph Smith, and with him is my beloved son, hear him". Both the witness that Father in Heaven is our God love Father in Heaven because not only provided a Savior for us, so we could becoming people of justice and perfect

Father, and the **Holy Ghost assists us** in person who comes to this earth, because life, possesses the light of Christ. This Jesus Christ to assist us in our quest. conscience. Everyone on this earth, no

matter how little they have been formally exposed to the teachings of Jesus Christ by his authorized texts and messengers, can respond to conscience, or reject it. We all know deep down that we should treat each other fairly, and be merciful to each other whenever possible.

## I Believe: Part 3: Conclusions

To reiterate,

I believe we lived with our heavenly parents and fellow siblings of the human race for a very long time as **intelligent spirits before we came to this earth**. I believe that our Father in Heaven created this earth as an aid in our quest to become as he is, given that said quest entails the reception of bodies and the acquisition of experience therein. The pain and joy we experience in this life are critical teaching tools from our heavenly parents.

I believe that our Father in Heaven has created an **immense number of planets**, many of which he has tailored through specific astronomical arrangements to suit human life. I believe these planets serve the same purpose to others of his children as our earth does for us, as his desires for the complete progress of his children are universal. I believe that our Father in Heaven has power over all operations which affect us, and that he allows us to have the agency to make our own moral choices.

I believe that to make **mercy** available to us, Father in Heaven directed his most advanced son, a divine being named Jesus Christ, to perform a vicarious atonement in our behalf. I believe that everyone, even those who feel weak unclean or simple, can become like our Father in Heaven as they sincerely attempt to make good choices today, and, when they understand and believe in the role of Jesus Christ, access his assistance.

I believe that our Father in Heaven has made arrangements for the entire human race to eventually **overcome physical death** in a universal reconstitution (resurrection) of our bodies, and that this will take place at a point in time in the near future. I believe that

when this happens, we will continue as intelligent corporal beings indefinitely, just like our Father in Heaven. I believe that the power of intellect and the corporal beauty will be greatly expanded at this time, especially for those who have sought to align their lives with eternal laws.

I believe our **families are a prototype** of the lifestyle of our Father in Heaven, intended to exist indefinitely and grow exponentially. I believe that sexual relations outside of a marriage between a man and woman are not in keeping with the laws of the universe, and that they do not contribute to the progress of our species, nor the individual development of the individual eternal soul. I also believe that celibacy and ideological rejection of marriage and childbearing cut a person off from their potential to become our heavenly parents. I believe that people are best served personally and on a societal level as they adhere to social practices of modest dress, marriage, & childbearing.

I believe our Father in Heaven responds to unprecedented evil in our world by sending us **unprecedented truth and power**. While I believe that these gifts of truth and power are embodied in and administered through The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (Mormonism), I believe he has good things in store for all people of good will everywhere, regardless of their beliefs. Further, I believe that to assist us in establishing world peace and personal progress, our Father in Heaven will again send Jesus Christ to be king of all earth for 1,000 years, and that this millennium will commence in the very near future, as foretold by the prophets.

**Those who elected to follow Lucifer** in the pre-earth life are forever disappointed in his inability to deliver on his promises. Lucifer has been cursed by Father for his rebellion. Father participates in the administration of the just laws of the universe. This is what makes him God. If Father were to cease to uphold justice, he would cease to be God. Those who seek joy in ways not in accordance with the eternal laws of the universe seek a thing that can never be. All of those who elected to follow Lucifer elected a false paradigm, and now they suffer the natural consequences thereof. Rebellion against Father in Heaven while in pre-earth life was a very serious and open rebellion against goodness and truth.

When we have finished this short life, **God will judge** us to see if we have passed the final test of operating righteously without being under his constant supervision. The judgement will expose our character and show if we have again elected goodness, or if we have turned to evil.

In that **judgement**, he will take into account our circumstances, our abilities, and everything else he can to load all the mercy into our contract that he can, including the help of Jesus Christ which can be accessed by faith, repentance, baptism, receiving the Holy Ghost, and enduring to the end of life while applying the teachings of Jesus Christ as found in the Holy Bible, and other holy scripture found in The Church of Jesus Christ. Not only do we have access to the words of Jehovah to people of times of old, but we also have, thanks to the never-ending goodness of Father, more revelations applicable to the entire human race which flow to us from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. That church is the venue God uses to communicate his will to man on earth. That church bears the title of the name of Jesus Christ, because Jesus Christ is the owner of that church. He has sanctioned it, and personally appears to his prophet speakers therein to send universal messages of light truth and hope to the human race.

Those who **accept the words of the prophets** as found in the church of Jesus Christ will be much better prepared for the judgement of God which is soon to come to each individual. Some core components of the judgement of God will include whether we sought truth, whether we helped others, how we treated our spouse, and how we treated our children, including the attention to individual relationships with each of them.

Because of the central role bodies play in our Father's plan of happiness, **the body is one of the key ways that we can do good in life, or evil**. Taking the life of another except in self-defense or righteous defense of nation is a most serious sin, comparable only to the greatest sin called "denying the Holy Ghost", which essentially means willful rebellion against God after God has revealed himself to you. The sin next in seriousness is that of adultery, which involves sexual relations outside of marriage between a man and woman lawfully married. This sin frequently involves the murder of babies in the womb, and long-term anguish of spirit as a result of emotional and spiritual ties between two people which become broken, which ties were never meant to be broken. When someone commits their entire body to another person, giving full access to it, it is a holy symbol of how every other part of their lives should also be united. Marriages are intended by God to be effective not only in this life, but in the eternal world to come. Just as Father and Mother in heaven are two people who will never be separated, so are we their children meant to be. We like them are designed to pair up with each other, and remain paired forever. Man and woman are two essential halves of an eternal family. Mankind will never be long term satisfied in attempts to navigate social relationships outside of the context of marriage between man and woman. Further, children are entitled to be reared in a home with a mother and father committed to each other. Sexual misconduct leads to unfavorable circumstances for children, and such brings the wrath of God. Another reason we value marital fidelity is that it is the key venue for developing charity. Marital happiness including the maintenance of a relationship with spouse and children both require self-denial on a regular basis, and for one to confront all of their conscious and subconscious weaknesses. This unique tutelage is the only way to fully develop charity. This does not mean that a single person is not charitable, but it means that no one can reach exaltation until they have passed through the refining trials of family life. For some those refining experiences will not be accessible until a later time known to God, but those who willingly avoid and defame the institution of marriage and parenthood are cowards who unwittingly hold themselves back from progress they were sent to earth to make. Life a river blocked in its progress toward its destination, so does the deliberate procrastination of family creation hold a person back from the ultimate goal of exaltation. Exaltation entails enjoying the character and lifestyle of God, and all power that entails. Well can it be said that parenthood is the fountain of exaltation.

The **ultimate outcome** of our existence can take several directions.

**Followers of Lucifer receive no glory**, and remain in a place called outer darkness forever. Among those who made it to earth, only a small few will defect to this depraved state called perdition. The rest of the 2/3 of Father's children, including everyone who has been born on this earth, will inherit an eternal residence in a kingdom of God forever.

There are 3 such kingdoms, all of which contain joy and glory to varying degrees. The lowest of these is titled the **telestial kingdom**. It is akin to life on this earth. Those who are assigned residence in the telestial kingdom are those who were willing to live telestial law, no more, no less. The lesser than this is perdition. They tested out of that by electing Jehovah in the pre-earth life, and by not devoting themselves to the ways of Lucifer in this life. The telestial residents are often rebellious and wicked, and must endure a temporary state of suffering as punishment for their evil deeds before they can qualify for residence in the telestial kingdom of glory. There exists a place where our spirits reside between the time of death and the time of the resurrection of the body. Depending on how we lived our lives, that state will either be pleasant, or filled with utmost despair and anguish. The wicked people of earth will live in anguish in this period directly following the death of the body. Another term for this place for spirits while they await the resurrection is the spirit world. The spirit world is on this earth, but cannot be discerned by finite mortal eyes. There exists in the spirit world both a place of suffering or hell, and a place of gladness or paradise. Those who must suffer in this hell are they who, to some degree or other, did not elect Jesus Christ to assist them in payment of the debts they owed from their offenses committed against the laws of the universe as upheld by our Father in Heaven. In addition to payment of debts, a large component of the suffering in hell will be a realization of what they could have had if they had simply chosen to follow the light of Christ. If they had not repeatedly ignored their conscience, and if they had instead chosen to figuratively lay down their weapons of rebellion, the state of their eternal enjoyment could have been so much greater. There exists another group of persons who do not enjoy paradise in the world of spirits: these are the ignorant. These are they who never knew of the plan of Father, never knew of Jehovah or Jesus Christ and his intercession and accompanying laws of baptism and repentance. These ignorant persons who, by no fault of their own, did not have access to eternal truths which could have guided their lives, will be taught the eternal truths, and given the opportunity to receive baptism and the other ordinances needed for access to the highest kingdom of glory. These ignorant persons did have access to conscience like everyone else, but without the guiding principles of true religion, they did not find expression to what they otherwise could have done in life. There exist today on earth in the Church of Jesus Christ, holy temples, wherein living persons assist their dead forefathers to learn of and receive the gospel of Jesus Christ.

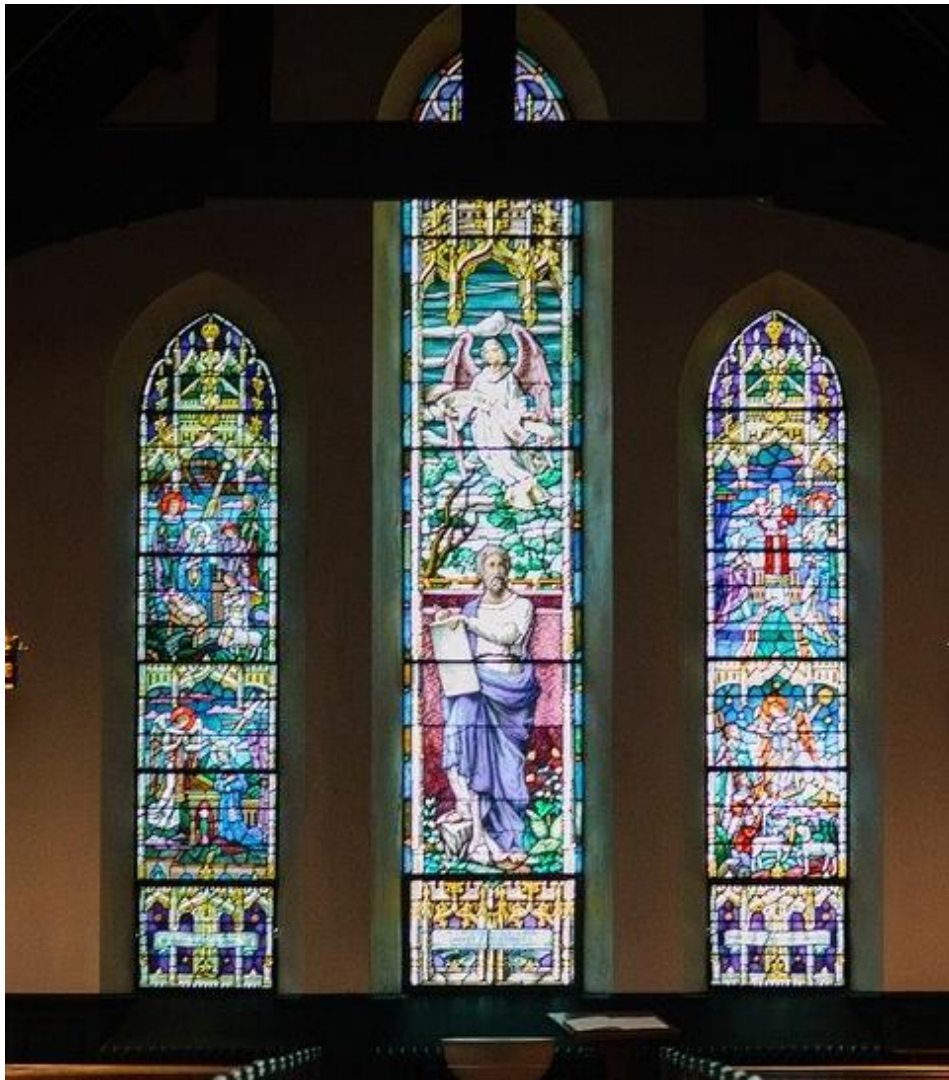
The next kingdom of glory which a person may be assigned to is the **terrestrial kingdom** of glory. This is a place for the good and honorable people of earth. In that kingdom, they will be frequently visited by Jesus Christ, and enjoy the association of each other, and many pleasant blessings from Father.

The next kingdom of glory is the **celestial kingdom** of glory. To enter this kingdom one must accept the teachings of Jesus Christ as found in His Church, and commit to follow Jesus Christ via baptism into His Church. To advance in that kingdom, one must enter holy temples to receive further training. To reach the highest level of the celestial kingdom wherein one bursts the ceiling and creates their own kingdom, one must be married. When a man marries a woman in the house of God, that marriage is the key to their exaltation, so long as they maintain that marriage in righteousness, including repenting as needed, and obeying the words of God as communicated to them through the Holy Ghost and the prophets in the Church of Jesus Christ. For those who obtain this highest degree of glory in the celestial kingdom, there is no end to their glory. They like the Gods who have come before them, sit upon thrones, create worlds, and as Jehovah promised to Abraham, have a never-ending posterity, more numerable than the sands of the sea and starts in the sky. This high glory of the celestial is far surpassing anything found in the lower kingdoms. In every kingdom of God, the basic laws of God are enforced, including the law of chastity, which states that sexual relations are only to be had between man and wife, lawfully wedded. For a marriage to be efficacious in the life to come, and to continue there what was started here, that contract of marriage, like any other contract, must be verified by Father. In the kingdom of Father, only contracts ratified by Father stand. Father is the governor there, and contracts not endorsed and endowed by himself are not valid there. This means that those who were baptized by a man who had not the authority of God will not have a valid recognized baptism, and will thus not be allowed access into the celestial kingdom of God. Further, the celestial kingdom residents who apply for access to the highest glory thereof as had in the marriage scenario, will be denied said advancement if the marriage they had created was not ratified by God. The place that a marriage ratified by God can be obtained is in his holy houses of law and order which we call temples. In and only in temples can eternal marriages not to be severed at the parting of death be performed. The teachings of Father are found in his church, and his church points candidates to his temples. The temple marriage is the only valid marriage because it is the only marriage which is created in the setting of obedience to the laws of God. To be allowed access to the holy temple, a candidate must pay their tithes, must live the law of chastity, must live the health code revealed by God, must obey the 10 commandments as revealed in the book of Exodus, must sustain the prophets leading the church of Jesus Christ, and agree to live other laws of God's kingdom. If someone is not willing to live the laws of God's kingdom, they are not willing to enjoy the blessings of God's kingdom. God's kingdom is a place of order, and those who will not abide the laws of a certain kingdom, must be demoted to the laws and blessings of the inferior kingdom. Those who reject all of God's laws defect to perdition. Most people accept the laws of the telestial or celestial kingdom. Few accept the laws of the celestial kingdom, and thus few enjoy the blessings of fully inheriting all things which God has, including the assumption of the very character and role of a God to ones continuing posterity. Because the laws of God are strictly enforced in his kingdoms, and sexual relations are forbidden outside of marriage, and marriage is only accessible to those who abide the many high commitments of the highest glory, the only place that the union of the male and female body is enjoyed is the highest glory of the celestial kingdom of God. This strict limitation further impresses upon our minds the attitude and character of God in relation to the sacredness of the body, and the sacredness of the marriage relation. It follows that the rearing of children in eternity is another privilege reserved for the highest glory of the celestial kingdom, which also impresses upon us the seriousness of the caring for children with which one is blessed in this life. These 3 different kingdoms of glory also bring with them varying levels of enhancement in the resurrection. The higher kingdoms include the most powerful and majestic bodies.

Reader, stand back, and **be joyful**. Pause for a moment to remember that Father in Heaven loves you. He is YOUR Father. Contrary to the opinion of the followers of Lucifer, Father's plan can work for YOU, and YOU can succeed therein. Jesus Christ has power



sufficient to save your soul from long term misery. He will give you the gift of a resurrected immortal body. Rejoice at how far you



have come, and how many blessings you have already qualified for! Fear not, and know that there is no limit to the number of residents that can fit in the celestial kingdom. Space is infinite, and matter can be organized to create more worlds. Let nothing make you afraid, only trust Jesus Christ. Find in prayer to Father the courage you need to start making better choices today. Weep for joy, for wherever you are, whoever you are, Father will hear you, and begin from the moment you bow your head to pray to him, begin to pour out exponentially more blessings upon your head than what he is already pouring upon you day by day. These blessings will include direct pleasures, and indirect pleasures in that he will enable you to be more successful in your righteous endeavors, which will bring great satisfaction and pleasure to your soul. Never give up. You have fought on the right side of truth for eons. Don't give up just yet. Hold out a little longer, and like the widow who cast in her few pennies at the temple treasury who was mocked for her poverty and inability to give, so do you, give what you can to build God's kingdom on earth, make every good choice you possibly can, including resting in the Lord, and then you will see the salvation of God. You will again know your Father's face, and with him enjoy eternal life. This life isn't just a "test", it is also, and perhaps more so, a

tutelage, a training, an apprenticeship. A large test was pre-mortality. You passed that test, and now have some amount of security to operate in. You have access to the mercy of Jesus Christ! You can make mistakes! It's like the golden parachute clause in major corporations: some employees are so valuable to the company, that even if they make big mistakes now and then, they are given forgiveness, for their ability to grow the company is so much greater than even the damages they have done. So it is with you, 2/3's. Everyone born to this earth has proven to Father in pre-mortal life that they are a very important player, who won't be kicked out for little or even big mistakes. However what will go against us is if we stop trying. No matter how long you've betrayed your conscience. No matter how many people you've let down. No matter how deep the hole you're in may seem. You can trust Jesus Christ. You can come to his church. You can give your figurative pennies to build your life in a positive direction, including attempts to look beyond yourself and serve others as righteous service opportunities will continue to present themselves to you in this most choice time we call mortality. Yes, agency allows people to start wars and rob each other of bread. But life is still worth it. I'm forever glad that I elected Jesus Christ and chose to come to earth, even though it is hard. Think not that a life of hardship is a sign that you are punished for sin. Yes we all have sin and our lives would be better if we could cut more of that out. But generally speaking, life is supposed to be hard. It was hard for Jesus Christ, who was "rejected in the house of his friends". Since life includes suffering, let's suffer together rather than alone. Come have joy with us, and share your fun personality and skills. We need you to help us, and we can help you. Let us support each other at church. Further, come have peace with us in the temple. Come learn with us more of who we really are and what we are really capable of. Come see how kind God is to those who are still willing to try. Choose the better part. Choose to believe. I believe.

## What Did Our Spirits Look Like Before Coming Here, And What Will We Look Like After Being Here?

A friend of mine related to me that he saw a spirit of his child who was to come, she had blue eyes and blond hair, but when she was born she had brown hair. He was confused, but the spirit taught him that what he saw was her spirit before she got his DNA.

Some near kin to me related accounts of seeing a passed loved one appear with blue eyes, rather than their typical brown eyes the person had in life. Two people had a similar vision, both seeing the person as having blue eyes.

Joseph Smith described God the Father as having blue eyes, and the son of God looking exactly like the Father.

In the fighting preacher movie, it's about early saints serving a mission as a family. The woman was downcast from much toil. Some missionaries came to their home to eat, one of the missionaries spoke to a mission leader for some time. The missionary event revealed himself as Jesus Christ in disguise.

I wonder what we will all look like after this life. Certainly the fall and diseases and so other aspects of this life leave us looking quite dreary at times. I anticipate great physical beauty to be had by all in the celestial resurrection.

Brigham Young spoke of how all who reach exaltation will be as beautiful as the angels that surround the throne of God. He also spoke of how each person there is shockingly beautiful.

We also know a typical mortal person now cannot see a resurrected being unless his spiritual eyes are opened. There are many passages of the Lord being present yet they could not see him. We also have Moroni appearing to Joseph without disturbing the others in the cabin.

Due to the special nature of a resurrected body, it seems our eyes cannot now behold them normally, even though a resurrected body does have flesh and bone.

It is also a possibility that celestial worlds aren't visible to us, hence the supposed "black hole" in the center of the galaxy. (Of course black holes don't really exist)

But actually Suns are Celestial Kingdoms as was taught by Hyrum Smith and Brigham Young.



## Pre-Mortality – Teachings of the Prophets

-“God has important work for each of us. Speaking to sisters but teaching truths that apply to all, President Spencer W. Kimball taught: “Before we came [to earth, we] were given certain assignments. ... While we do not now remember the particulars, this does not alter the glorious reality of what we once agreed to.” (Spencer W. Kimball, “The Role of Righteous Women,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1979, 102) What an ennobling truth! Our Heavenly Father has specific and significant things for you and me to accomplish (see Ephesians 2:10). These divine assignments are not reserved for a privileged few but are for all of us—regardless of gender, age, race, nationality, income level, social status, or Church calling. Every one of us has a meaningful role to play in furthering God’s work (see Moses 1:39). Some of us question whether Heavenly Father can use us to make important contributions. But remember, He has always used ordinary people to accomplish extraordinary things (see 1 Corinthians 1:27–28; D&C 35:13; 124:1). “[We] are agents,” and “the power is in [us]” to “bring to pass much righteousness” (D&C 58:27–28). (President Gordon B. Hinckley encouraged: “Believe in yourself. Believe in your capacity to do great ... things. ... You are a child of God, of infinite capacity” (Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Gordon B. Hinckley [2016], 77).) President Russell M. Nelson explained: “The Lord has more in mind for you than you have in mind for yourself! You have been reserved and preserved for this time and place. ... The Lord needs you to change the world. As you accept and follow His will for you, you will find yourself accomplishing the impossible!” (Russell M. Nelson, *Accomplishing the Impossible: What God Does, What We Can Do* (2015), 147.) ” (Oct. 2017 Conf. Report “I have a work for Thee” by Elder John C. Pingree Jr. of the Seventy, see <https://www.lds.org/general-conference/2017/10/i-have-a-work-for-thee?lang=eng>)

-Speaking of the differences between spirits, President Joseph Fielding Smith said: “We know they were all innocent in the beginning; but the right of free agency which was given to them enabled some to outstrip others, and thus, through the eons of immortal existence, to become more intelligent, more faithful, for they were free to act for themselves, to think for themselves, to receive the truth or rebel against it” (Doctrines of Salvation, 1:59). (<https://www.lds.org/manual/the-pearl-of-great-price-student-manual/the-book-of-abraham?lang=eng>)

-The Prophet Joseph Smith stated: “God himself, finding he was in the midst of spirits and glory, because he was more intelligent, saw proper to institute laws whereby the rest could have a privilege to advance like himself. The relationship we have with God places us in a situation to advance in knowledge. He has power to institute laws to instruct the weaker intelligences, that they may be exalted with Himself, so that they might have one glory upon another, and all that knowledge, power, glory, and intelligence, which is requisite in order to save them in the world of spirits” (History of the Church, 6:312). (<https://www.lds.org/manual/the-pearl-of-great-price-student-manual/the-book-of-abraham?lang=eng>)

-The Prophet Joseph Smith taught: “I am dwelling on the immortality of the spirit of man. Is it logical to say that the intelligence of spirits is immortal, and yet that it has a beginning? The intelligence of spirits had no beginning, neither will it have an end. That is good logic” (History of the Church, 6:311). (<https://www.lds.org/manual/the-pearl-of-great-price-student-manual/the-book-of-abraham?lang=eng>)

-“Mankind are organized of element designed to endure to all eternity; it never had a beginning and never can have an end. There never was a time when this matter, of which you and I are composed, was not in existence, and there never can be a time when it will pass out of existence; it cannot be annihilated.

“It is brought together, organized, and capacitated to receive knowledge and intelligence, to be enthroned in glory, to be made angels, Gods—beings who will hold control over the elements, and have power by their word to command the creation and redemption of worlds, or to extinguish suns by their breath, and disorganize worlds, hurling them back into their chaotic state. This is what you and I are created for” (Discourses of Brigham Young, 48; see also D&C 93:29–33). (<https://www.lds.org/manual/the-pearl-of-great-price-student-manual/the-book-of-abraham?lang=eng>)

-“IN THE PREMORTAL REALM, spirit sons and daughters knew and worshipped God as their Eternal Father and accepted His plan by which His children could obtain a physical body and gain earthly experience to progress toward perfection and ultimately realize their divine destiny as heirs of eternal life. The divine plan of happiness enables family relationships to be perpetuated beyond the grave. Sacred ordinances and covenants available in holy temples make it possible for individuals to return to the presence of God and for families to be united eternally.” (The Family: A Proclamation to the World: First Presidency of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints) (<https://www.lds.org/topics/family-proclamation>)

-“Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee; and before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee, and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations.” Jeremiah 1:5

-“And there was war in heaven; Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon and his angels fought against Michael;” Joseph Smith Translation Rev. 12:6

-“When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?” Job 38:7

-“Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I am.” John 5:58

-“Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.” Ether 3:16

-“And the Lord said: Whom shall I send? And one answered like unto the Son of Man: Here am I, send me. And another answered and said: Here am I, send me. And the Lord said: I will send the first.” Abraham 3:27

– 1 “In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

2 The same was in the beginning with God.

3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.” John 1:1-3

-“the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him.” John 1:18

-“And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.” John 1:14

-“Jesus answered, My kingdom is not of this world: if my kingdom were of this world, then would my servants fight, that I should not be delivered to the Jews: but now is my kingdom not from hence.” John 18:36

## Pre-Existence by Ogden Kraut – Book Highlights

Full text Audio at [https://youtu.be/0C3tT\\_yXSLk](https://youtu.be/0C3tT_yXSLk)

Full Text free at [ogdenkraut.com](http://ogdenkraut.com)

This is a series of 3 books:

Pre existence, paradise, resurrection

The reason for the unequal and unfair conditions on Earth is the pre-existence

Who did sin this man or his parents - this question shows a man could sin before he is born

I proceeded forth and came from God said Jesus, and he said before Abraham was I am

The knowledge Jesus had before coming to Earth was taken from him, this was very humiliating (note - part of the condescension of God (1 Ne. 11))

The one third fallen angels are clearly spirits not resurrected beings who fell

Jude says these are fallen Angels who kept not their first estate

It also says they are reserved in chains of darkness until their judgment which means they did not live on a prior world, they are waiting judgment on this one

The council in heaven took place after the earth was formed because the losers of the war were cast out to Earth as spirits

And the devil was there in Eden

Michael was in charge of the armies of heaven and Joseph thought this is Adam so Michael would not have left his station to be Adam until the war was over so we know the war was over before Adam came to Earth

There must have been sin in the pre-existence because the Lamb was slain from before the foundation of the world

(note – this is an interesting debate. Some say no sin in pre-mortality, because there's no sin in heaven. We do see though that people were taking sides. There was obviously greater and lesser amounts of valiance. I do say pre-mortality was in heaven, in the celestial kingdom where God raised us from his knee (at the MTC in 2011 Elder Holland told us God raised us from his knee in pre-mortality). Some say pre-mortality wasn't in heaven because there was sin. I say it was there. God spends his time parenting, and he spends his time in his home. Naturally, many had to leave heaven when it got to a certain point, they were cast out.)

Christ suffered in spirit for the sins of the spirits and suffered and body for the sins of those in the body

(note – this applies to the above idea for sin in the pre-mortal spirit world. It is debatable but interesting. It implies Christ did a spiritual atonement over there for spirits)

We know there was knowledge of good and evil in the pre-existence because one third of the Angels got kicked out for being evil

Life on this Earth is a state of Innocence, it is another probation (note – called the 2<sup>nd</sup> estate) and that is why we forgot all before coming here so we can have this fair test

Man exists on the same principles of God, and that is eternal, in other words, self-existing

Jesus was shown his pre-mortal life as evidenced by his prayer to bring him the glory that he had with him before the world was

(note – it seems Jesus figured out pretty quickly his pre-mortal identity and life's mission. He was teaching in the temple at age 12, and needed not that anyone should teach him.)

The knowledge that we lived before this Earth with God indicates that we're going back home to familiar people, we're not just going to meet God

(note – this is a motif of many legends and scriptures: starting out at home / in the promised land, going on a journey, then returning. This supports the idea that we lived in heaven before coming to earth, as in we lived in the celestial kingdom.)

Everybody believes in an immaterial heaven and that we popped out of nowhere to exist here but the Latter-Day saints know better and we're the only ones who do

There's about 20 children born every second

The prophet Joseph Smith taught that we have no beginning and no end, and this is where he used the ring analogy, that it's a continuous circle

Spirits are anxious to obtain a body and they'd rather take a chance of going in a lowly body and a lowly circumstance than to risk not getting a body at all

Knowing of our life before and the life to come and the gift that this life is, the Latter-Day Saints should be the happiest of all people

There was the condescension of God but there's also the condescension of man. We came by the Fall, we condescended to come here too.

Before Abraham was I am - this refers to Jesus being the firstborn of the spirit

(Note - apparently Adam came from something higher than this life because it was said that he fell)

The scripture says God hath anointed thee above thy fellows - referring to the preordination of Christ, this shows there were others there as well

Scripture speaks of returning to God, indicating we were there before

Scripture calls Jesus the elder brother and the firstborn

Scripture says that in his humiliation, his judgment was taken away. This is speaking of Christ, of the memory that he had before coming here, of the power he had to make worlds

Jesus grew in wisdom and knowledge because he had forgotten when he came here. We all forgot

God created and then it says there was not a man left to build the Earth; this is evidence as well as in the Joseph Smith translation of the Bible that the creation account was of the spiritual creation up to that point. This confuses the Christian world and they think it's an error in the Bible when it talks about it there

Man was on earth before animal (as multiple scriptures in the D&C etc. attest)

Animals have spirits. But they aren't the offspring of God. The spirits look like what the body looks like. The body

conforms to the spirit.

The seventh day was not all rest, much of creation took place then

You cannot remember the first 6 months of life, yet exist we did

There's no such place as beyond time and space. All is tangible and real. Heaven is a place.

(note - A planet, in fact this one will become a heaven, and God the Father lives on his home planet, and Christ will rule as God of this planet under the direction of the Father.)

Every person who comes to Earth has the opportunity to merit salvation

God can see the future but people still have their agency to choose

We cry repentance and strive to save souls because it is still hanging in the balance, it's not yet determined

These days there are sheep herders who make all kinds of noises and yells to get their sheep to do things, but back in the day there were shepherds and the sheep would follow the shepherd and easily know his voice

How would his sheep know his voice if they had not heard it in the pre-existence?

Joseph feeling Smith taught there are two reasons we have the veil and do not remember our prior existence. First is because it gives us full access to agency. Second is because it motivates us to stay on this Earth until our work is finished, because if we remember the wondrous place we came from we would probably feel quite miserable here

It is suggested that various races and religions and countries into which we are born are determined by valence in the life before. Many leaders taught this

(note – I like to point out the possibility also of people choosing to fill missions among certain peoples etc. which could also influence where and how someone is born.)

Those who are valiant for God are spread throughout time and throughout the world so there can be leadership

(note – which supports the point I was making above, that living among various people's and places can be mission calls to serve)

Orson Pratt spoke of how we come here without wisdom and knowledge and we are tested to see if we will pay attention to the little bit we get, and if we do obey that we get more. But the things we get in this life are still far inferior to the knowledge wisdom law etc. in a life to come

(note – I wonder if the veil was the mind forgetting and not so much the heart, that the path we take reflects our heart...)

.....

About min 353 it starts the Mosiah Hancock journal vision, here are some highlights of it:

It takes the power of the Holy Ghost to tell apart the Father and the Son, they look so much alike

He saw God on his throne and God's wives by him

People were created mates, they were in pairs of male and female, but many men went to perdition so they arranged plural marriage (no women went to perdition) (hint: it's called "sons" of perdition)

In pre-mortal classes they learned arts sciences etc. everything to make them happy

Some became more proficient than others and were advanced from class to class

People like Joseph Brigham etc. were teaching

The Great Eternal is what they call God there

Jesus volunteered to go down to set the example of humility and patience

Lucifer appeared to be a chief military officer and when his plan was kindly rejected he didn't stop advocating it and he eventually came out in open rebellion

Lucifer's plan was called "the rights of the second"

The wicked gathered around Lucifer and the righteous gather around the Father and the Son and one called Michael said we will have this contest

(Note - this indicates Michael as a separate being from the father)

Those on the side of the Lord took the white star and those on the side of Lucifer took the red star

(note the similarity to symbols of red communists)

Some of them would not take a side, they wouldn't take either star

(note – you'll see eventually they did, ultimately all who came to earth did take a side, as prophets have indicated)

No females went with Lucifer

Those who took no place in the contest would keep their females and be a race of servants

(note – this is a hard teaching, but thankfully we now afford great blessings to all races)

The one third who went with Lucifer were all males and their females were given to those who stayed with the Lord as a second wife

The ranks were now of the followers of God having two females per male

There were classes, teachers, questions, etc. Some of the teachers asked the people if they were willing to live the higher laws of God, meaning plural marriage. Sometimes they would respond by saying no, they just wanted to enjoy themselves. When asked if they would join the Church of God some would say no, they just wanted to be an officer or a judge or some other trade. They were asked if they would sustain the laws of God and of all mankind, and in every instance the answer was yes (note – naturally the answer was yes among those who weren't perdition)

Some males even in heaven would neglect their females. They would go off not worrying about their duties

The Lord told woman taught by Joseph together around him to increase his posterity on the earth, and they did form a ring around Joseph and pledged to find him on Earth. Others like Brigham, John Taylor and other less notable men also had circles of sisters around them, and the Savior would enter the circle and perform rites.

The neglected daughters were all accounted for by plural marriage

He saw Abraham return from his probation to be crowned and exalted

When the time comes for mortal probation, one is set apart by the laying on of hands.  
Then they dive down to the Earth like lightning.

Our associates volunteer to be our family.

He was told that he would have to go down to life and be misunderstood even by his brethren

## A Nine Part Saga of Life & Eternity

7 episode drama - 9 if add in prequel sequel:

1. Prequel: premortal and creation
2. 1 first thousand years Adam
3. 2<sup>nd</sup> thousand years
4. 3<sup>rd</sup> thousand years
5. 4<sup>th</sup> thousand years
6. 5<sup>th</sup> thousand years
7. 6<sup>th</sup> thousand years
8. 7<sup>th</sup> thousand years: signs and terr millen
9. Sequel: beyond the 7k yrs: the celestial

## Emulating the Godhead in the Pre-Mortal, Mortal, & Post-Mortal Existence: An Allegory of The Plan of Salvation in the 3 Phases of Life & The 3 Kingdoms of Glory

### **Overview:**

The Holy Ghost is a member of the Godhead. The Holy Ghost is a spirit, and shows us how to live in a premortal state. Those who prove worthy there eventually come to an earth to live. Jesus Christ is another member of the Godhead. Jesus Christ came to this earth 2000 years ago and showed us how to live in our mortal lives. Heavenly Father is another member of the Godhead. Heavenly Father's status shows us what it is like after mortal life if we prove faithful.

In pre-mortality, we were like the Holy Ghost, without a body. In this life, we are like Jesus Christ, with a body. In the next life, we can, if we prove faithful here, be like Heavenly Father, with an eternal body and spirit combined.

The premortal stage was for preparation. Mortal stage is for performance. Post-mortal stage is where we reach completion, and continue our labors in a state of exaltation.

The Godhead is set up to show us how to live. We are to pattern our eternal lives after their eternal lives if we wish to enjoy, with them, the fullest blessings of eternal life & exaltation.

The Doctrine and Covenants reveals the government of the kingdoms of God. In the kingdoms of God, the Holy Ghost ministers to the telestial. In the terrestrial, Jesus Christ ministers. In the celestial, Heavenly Father ministers. Each member of the Godhead is a worthy resident of the celestial kingdom. The Godhead work together to rule the various kingdoms of glory.

We will consider an analogy of how the premortal mortal and post-mortal stages are typified by these the 3 members of the Godhead. We will also consider, for the purposes of this analogy, that the telestial, terrestrial, and celestial kingdoms are like unto 3 stages of progression. I do not believe that a permanent assignment to one of these 3 kingdoms post-mortally can ever be changed, we are just using them as analogies of stages of growth and development. Examples of this are presented in the sections of this presentation as follows.

### **We will consider 11 analogies where this parable:**

Analogy 1: Ministers / Prototypes

Analogy 2: Family Elements

Analogy 3: Family Stage

Analogy 4: Perfect Faith Required for Salvation (2 Ne. 9:23): Joseph Smith's 3 elements of faith

Analogy 5: Role of Scripture

Analogy 6: Success Rate

Analogy 7: Prevailing Expectation

Analogy 8: Vision / Perspective  
Analogy 9: Temple Connections  
Analogy 10: Prevailing Sentiment  
Analogy 11: Selection Process for God's Several Kingdoms of Glory  
Bonus Analogy: The Batman Trilogy

**Within each analogy, we will consider 3 categories:**

- a. Celestial likeness, Premortal era, Preparatory stage
- b. Terrestrial likeness, Mortality era, Performing stage
- c. Celestial likeness, Post-Mortality era, Complete stage

**Analogy 1: Ministers / Prototypes**

- a. Ministers / Prototypes of Celestial/Premortal/Preparatory:

Holy Ghost (unembodied)

- b. Ministers / Prototypes of Terrestrial/Mortality/Performing:

Jesus Christ (embodied)

- c. Ministers / Prototypes of Celestial/Post-Mortality/Completion:

Heavenly Father (perfectly / indestructibly / perpetually embodied)

**Analogy 2: Family Elements**

- a. Family Elements of Celestial/Premortal/Preparatory:

Testify of God our Father and his family-based plan

- b. Family Elements of Terrestrial/Mortality/Performing:

Selfless sacrifice in adhering to God's laws in relationships; Family based priorities

- c. Family Elements of Celestial/Post-Mortality/Completion:

Use of family unit to achieve theosis (theosis= human becoming God); Perpetuate family structure

**Analogy 3: Family Stage**

- a. Family Stage of Celestial/Premortal/Preparatory:

Family orientation

- b. Family Stage of Terrestrial/Mortality/Performing:

Family creation

- c. Family Stage of Celestial/Post-Mortality/Completion:

Perpetual Families; Create and orient your creation

**Analogy 4: Perfect Faith Required for Salvation (2 Ne. 9:23):**

(Joseph Smith's 3 elements of faith as found in 'Lectures On Faith')

- a. Faith stage of Celestial/Premortal/Preparatory:



Know the characteristics of God. Believe in God and chose his plan.

b. Faith stage of Terrestrial/Mortality/Performing:

Know that you are living in accordance to God's expectations. Emulate Jesus Christ the Son of God. We are also sons & daughters of God.

c. Faith stage of Celestial/Post-Mortality/Completion:

Receive all promised blessings.

#### **Analogy 5: Role of Scripture**

a. Role of Scripture of Telectial/Premortal/Preparatory:

Motivate creations to adopt creator's philosophy.

b. Role of Scripture of Terrestrial/Mortality/Performing:

Execute scripture (law) from our creator.

c. Role of Scripture of Celestial/Post-Mortality/Completion:

Create scripture for your creations.

#### **Analogy 6: Success Rate**

a. Success Rate of Telectial/Premortal/Preparatory:

2/3 success; 1/3 defect to perdition. Everyone has equal opportunity succeed, but not everyone choses to do so.

b. Success Rate of Terrestrial/Mortality/Performing:

Narrow path, but only a few defect all the way down to perdition. Everyone has equal opportunity succeed, but not everyone choses to do so.

c. Success Rate of Celestial/Post-Mortality/Completion:

Many called, few chosen for theosis. However, God's mercy and justice provide alternate kingdoms for inferior levels of performance. Everyone has equal opportunity succeed, but not everyone choses to do so.

#### **Section 7: Prevailing Expectation**

a. Prevailing Expectation of Telectial/Premortal/Preparatory:

Receive

b. Prevailing Expectation of Terrestrial/Mortality/Performing:

Give

c. Prevailing Expectation of Celestial/Post-Mortality/Completion:

Receive and Give in eternal balance.

#### **Section 8: Vision & Perspective**

a. Vision & Perspective of Telectial/Premortal/Preparatory:

See the plan

b. Vision & Perspective of Terrestrial/Mortality/Performing:

Operate the plan (without "seeing" it; walk by faith); Probation / Test / Exam

c. Vision & Perspective of Celestial/Post-Mortality/Completion:

See & show "one eternal round"

### **Section 9: Temple Connections**

a. Temple Connections of Telestial/Premortal/Preparatory:

Faith in & covenant with deity required to succeed and pass into next phase

b. Temple Connections of Terrestrial/Mortality/Performing:

Covering the spirit with a body as a temple symbol; sacred vs profane space; Discriminatory relationships.

c. Temple Connections of Celestial/Post-Mortality/Completion:

Marriage as a type/symbol of reunion with presence of God. Procreative marriage a foretaste of theosis.

### **Section 10: Prevailing Sentiment**

a. Prevailing Sentiment of Telestial/Premortal/Preparatory:

Rejoice (Job 37:8)

b. Prevailing Sentiment of Terrestrial/Mortality/Performing:

Weep (Isa. 53:3)

c. Prevailing Sentiment of Celestial/Post-Mortality/Completion:

Eternal balance of rejoicing and weeping (Isa. 25:8; Moses 7:29-37)

### **Section 11: Selection Process for God's Several Kingdoms of Glory**

a. Selection Process of Telestial/Premortal/Preparatory:

The sons of perdition (1/3 of God's children) didn't make it on to the next stage of mortality despite the opportunities they were given before being cast down to perdition. They refused to live up the telestial standard required for mortal life within the ample and merciful time given them. The rest (2/3) came to the next level of progress: Mortality.

b. Selection Process of Terrestrial/Mortality/Performing:

Mortals who remain telestial in their attitudes/behaviors don't make it on to the next stage of progression, the great Millennium. These wicked are consumed in the millennial day at the Second Coming of Christ, despite the opportunities they were given before his return. They refused to live up the terrestrial standard required for millennial life within the ample and merciful time given them. The rest are permitted to advance into the Millennial stage to further progress toward exaltation.

c. Selection Process of Celestial/Post-Mortality/Completion:

Millennials who remain merely terrestrial in their attitudes/behaviors do not qualify for exaltation; they fail to qualify for exaltation despite opportunities during the Millennium. They refused to live up the celestial standard required for eternal life and exaltation within the ample and merciful time given them. The rest who do qualify for exaltation go onward to complete perfection, and become Gods themselves. They enter into 'the rest of the Lord' (Alma 13:16).

**Bonus Analogy: The Batman Trilogy** (I don't suggest the movie, but the theme is indicative of the hero story and gospel plan)



(image spliced from movie covers by unknown)

a. Celestial likeness, Premortal era, Preparatory stage

Creation. Self-discovery, orientation, anticipation, faith to go forward despite not comprehending all the details of the future.

b. Terrestrial likeness, Mortality era, Performing stage

Fall. Things not going as smoothly as you anticipated. The Fall of Adam. Coping with the fallen nature. Not giving up when beaten down.

c. Celestial likeness, Post-Mortality era, Complete stage

Atonement. Conquering all things, rising above all things, completing the painful process of divine sacrifice for others. The Atonement of Christ. The atonement of giving all you are to others. Becoming like Christ in all things, eliminating the fallen nature.

### **3 Purposes, 7 Processes, 3 Principles from this Analogy:**

Purpose 1: The purpose of the family is to go on to exaltation, and participate in the eternal creation of more family units on a larger scale. Without the perpetuation of the family unit in eternity, the family is vain and will come to an end. There is no beginning of souls, they existed in the beginning with God, and they must go on forever. Even the damned will continue to exist forever, for they have no beginning, so they can have no end. The ultimate expression of the divine is that a family emulates the creative aspects of God.

Purpose 2: The purpose of studying the word of God in family settings is to express the message that the entire plan of salvation is based on the family unit. The religions of this world lack an understanding of the perpetuation of the family. The family must be together in heaven, and without this view, the family will lose motivation for virtuous livelihoods. The entire system of life is based on creation and edification of family units, and if those are to fall away in heaven, both the lack of will to do good for heaven and the will to do good for mortality vanish.

Purpose 3: The purpose of modest dress is to protect the chastity of women. Modest dress is additionally to represent the divine nature of the body, which should not be accessible to the general public, just like a temple and God's kingdom. The temple is not open enrollment, and God's university is thus scorned by the secular masses, but we have seen in social science that immodest dress is a type of how when the sacred is offered at large to the profane, then the relationship system fails. The relationships without the backbone of covenants fall apart as quickly as sand in one's hand. If women become unchaste, they lose the appreciation for themselves, and forget divine ideals and possibilities.

Process 1: A family must use the standard words as the key focus of their study, so they cannot reasonably deny the requirements of God's law to inherit salvation. The laws for salvation are contained in the standard works, and without their application, the preaching of the word of God does not occur, and the faith needed for salvation cannot be obtained. The individual matter of salvation becomes unavailable, and the higher family matter of exaltation becomes void.

Process 2: The family must teach each other the non-biological aspects of the plan of salvation by instructing in the value of relationships rather than mere animalistic approach to courtship. If a couple will court each other just for sexual attraction, they are forgetting about needed components of marital stability and overall happiness (including sexual intercourse frequency). The plan of God is designed to enable spirits in bodies to have eternal joy, but the spirit aspect of the body cannot be overlooked if this is to be successful.

Process 3: The family must emphasize the importance of selfless love in the mortality phase of God's plan. If the family will do this, the candidates for salvation will learn obedience by the things they suffer. The call to follow Christ is a call to suffer, and the world of false churches often go wrong on this point alone: that the path of Christ is not an easy path (though it is more easy than suffering in hell, as Christ said). Only by following Christ can any person, along with their hopes and dreams, attain divine goals, including marriage and continuing parenthood.

Process 4: The family must understand their role as testators, similar to the Holy Ghost. If the family will testify of the divinity of God to each other in their times of need, they will gain the strength they need to overcome their trials. Faith comes by hearing the word of God, and without this, the candidates cannot gain faith. Salvation is impossible to obtain without perfect faith as the Book of Mormon says, and thus hearing the word of God is essential to spiritual growth. The Holy Ghost is a person, this makes it easy for us to emulate him in our relationships. We can know truth just like he can.

Process 5: The family must worship God at the temple in order to understand the "why" of modest dress. Not only is there a strict code of modesty inside the temple, but there is also a symbol of modesty there which communicates essential lessons for why we cover our bodies. The scriptures say that Christ covered Adam and Eve in coats of skins. Skins are the result of slain beasts, like the Lamb of God being slain. The sacrifice of Christ is essential to our protection. We profane ourselves via sin, and Christ puts his life on the line and ultimately on the altar for our sakes to cover our sins and bring us back to the ways of God, away from our fallen ways. When we learn that there is sacred space and profane space, we will understand the need to cover our bodies as a symbol that we are willing to obey the laws of God even when it seems non-sensical to ourselves.

Process 6: The family must study the role of Father in Heaven. Without this understanding, they will not have hope of a glorious future. The perfections of Heavenly Father and the splendid roles he operates (including the divine weeping for souls in trial) give us hope that heaven will be more than strumming harps, and that there is a meaning to suffering which enables faith in God and in relationships even in hard times. The relationship will survive longer and even forever if we maintain faith in God, heaven, and a benevolent future. This will empower selfless love needed to maintain relationships with fellow imperfect beings.

Process 7: The family must repent of all their sins in order to stay together in eternity. All candidates of the family must be clean before being permitted into the presence of God. If the family does well but one individual does not, then the family will exist in the kingdom of God without the unclean member, for nothing can undo the laws of God. The mercy of Christ is operational only for repentant souls. Repentance is the benevolent key to unlock the otherwise forbidden doors of heaven, where only the just dwell. Christ was required to obey the law of God, and so are we. For us, one of the laws of God includes repentance, and we cannot be saved without it.

Principle 1: If God is worshiped by each member of the family individually and together in the home on a daily basis, the family will grow closer to each other. This means that the contrary is also true, namely that without God, relationships cannot thrive. If the individuals are left to themselves to find their way through the wilderness of life, they will be eaten by the wolves of secularism after becoming spiritually blind via their close-mindedness toward God. I use the word worship because it suggests the comparative might of God juxtaposed to the weakness of man. The family togetherness component is essential as the family and home are the laboratory to the human breed.

Principle 2: If marriage candidates value God's standards including particularly the modesty regulations, then they will have a marriage void of the strife aspect of eros love. This means that eros love while being a good thing ( a love of physical beauty), if not contained within the parameters the Lord has set, will be fundamentally destructive toward any relationship. To think that a couple can consider the bodies things to be taken lightly and still expect the favor and grace of God in their relationship, then their hopes are founded upon something totally in contradiction to the very plan of salvation, which focuses on the incorporation of spirits on an earth as a primary element of moral examination. To put it simply, to misuse the body is to fail the key question in the test of the human being. The immodest person either knowingly or unknowingly denies God by denying faith in his plan of happiness. His plan of happiness entails virtue in marriage covenants, and the body being a temple, the candidate is denying the sacredness of the human nature as being an embryonic deity. This negation of truth leads to the impossibility of exaltation.

Principle 3: If humans emulate the Godhead in their aspirations for family success and efforts to activate the plan of redemption, they will progress together toward exaltation. This means that each member of the Godhead plays a distinct role, and family members can emulate that person in each stage. In pre-mortality we emulated the Holy Ghost in testifying of the reality of God and his plans supernal & unique effectiveness. In mortality we walk the earth like Jesus Christ and take up our crosses doing our best like he did his best. In post-mortality we emulate Heavenly Father in the creation of spirit children and touring them through pre, post, and mortalities of their own. This aspect of sacrificial love in mortality is the glue which will hold family relationships together, and the post mortality aspect allows the perpetuation of the family system through eternity.

## Emulating the Godhead: ACCOMPANYING CHART (fix format)

<b><u>Typical Kingdom / Era / Purpose:</u></b>	<b><u>Telestial / Premortal / Preparatory</u></b>	<b><u>Terrestrial / Mortality / Perform</u></b>	<b><u>Celestial / Post-Mortality / Complete</u></b>
<b><u>Qualified Ministrants / Prototypes to Emulate:</u></b>	Holy Ghost (unembodied)	Jesus Christ (embodied)	Heavenly Father (perfectly / indestructibly / perpetually embodied)
<b><u>Key Family Oriented Elements:</u></b>	Testify of God our Father and his family-based plan	Selfless sacrifice in adhering to God's laws in relationships; Family based priorities	Use of family unit to achieve theosis (theosis= human becoming God); Perpetuate family structure
<b><u>Temple Connections:</u></b>	Faith in & covenant with deity required to succeed and pass into next phase	Covering body as a symbol of temples as sacred vs profane space. Discriminatory relationships.	Marriage as a type/symbol of reunion with presence of God. Procreative marriage a foretaste of theosis
<b><u>Perfect Faith Required for Salvation (2 Ne. 9:23): 3 Elements of Faith</u></b> <i>adapted from Joseph Smith</i>	Know the characteristics of God. Believe in God and chose his plan.	Know that you are living in accordance to God's expectations. Emulate Jesus Christ the Son of God. We are also sons of God.	Receive all promised blessings.
<b><u>Role of Scripture:</u></b>	Motivate creations to adopt creator's philosophy.	Execute scripture (law) from our creator.	Create scripture for your creations.
<b><u>Success Rate:</u></b>	2/3 success 1/3 defect to perdition	Narrow path, but only a few defect all the way down to perdition.	Many called, few chosen for theosis. However, God's mercy and justice provide alternate kingdoms for inferior levels of performance.
<b><u>Prevailing Expectation:</u></b>	Receive	Give	Receive and Give in eternal balance.
<b><u>Vision / Perspective:</u></b>	See the plan	Operate the plan (without "seeing" it; walk by faith) Probation / Test / Exam	See & show "one eternal round"
<b><u>Family Stage:</u></b>	Family orientation	Family creation	Perpetual Families; Create and orient your creation
<b><u>Prevailing Sentiment</u></b>	Rejoice (Job 37:8)	Weep (Isa. 53:3)	Eternal balance of rejoicing and weeping

			(Isa. 25:8; Moses 7:29-37)
--	--	--	----------------------------

## The Holy Ghost – Teachings of the Prophets

–“The gift of the Holy Ghost ... quickens all the intellectual faculties, increases, enlarges, expands and purifies all the natural passions and affections; and adapts them, by the gift of wisdom, to their lawful use. It inspires, develops, cultivates and matures all the fine-toned sympathies, joys, tastes, kindred feelings, and affections of our nature. It inspires virtue, kindness, goodness, tenderness, gentleness, and charity. It develops beauty of person, form and features. It tends to health, vigor, animation, and social feeling. It invigorates all the faculties of the physical and intellectual man. It strengthens, and gives tone to the nerves. In short, it is, as it were, marrow to the bone, joy to the heart, light to the eyes, music to the ears, and life to the whole being” (Key to the Science of Theology, 9th ed. [1965], 101). (Quoted in talk by Elder Perry, Conf. Report Apr. 1997, <https://www.lds.org/general-conference/1997/04/that-spirit-which-leadeth-to-do-good?lang=eng>)

–A more expanded text of the above text, “He is an intelligent being, in the Image of God, possessing every organ, attribute, sense, sympathy, and affection that is possessed by God Himself. But these are possessed by man, in his rudimental state, in a subordinate sense of the word. Or, in other words, these attributes are in embryo, and are to be gradually developed. They resemble a bud, a germ, which gradually develops into a bloom and then, by progress, produces the mature fruit after its own kind. The Gift of the Holy Ghost adapts itself to all these organs or attributes. It quickens all the intellectual faculties, increases, enlarges, expands and purifies all the natural passions and affections and adapts them by the gift of wisdom, to their lawful use. It inspires virtue, kindness, goodness, tenderness, gentleness and charity. It develops beauty of person, form and features. It tends to give health, vigor, animation and social feeling. It invigorates all the faculties of the physical and intellectual man. It strengthens and gives tone to the nerves. In short, it is, as it were, marrow to the bone, joy to the heart, light to the eyes, music to the ears, and life to the whole being.

In the presence of such persons (who have been thus affected by It), one feels to enjoy the light of their countenance, as the genial rays of a sunbeam. Their very atmosphere diffuses a thrill, a warm glow of pure gladness and sympathy of Spirit. No matter if the parties are strangers, entirely unknown to each other, each will be apt to remark in his own mind, and perhaps exclaim, when referring to the interview- “Oh, what an atmosphere encircles that stranger! How my heart thrilled with pure and holy feelings in the presence of this person. What confidence and sympathy he inspired. His countenance and spirit gave me more assurance than a thousand written recommendations, or introductory letters.” Such is the Gift of the Holy Ghost, and such are its operations, when received through the lawful channel-the Divine, Eternal Priesthood.”

(Parley P. Pratt, Key to the Science of Theology, pp. 101- 103)

–“It is a waste of time to speculate in relation to his jurisdiction. We know what has been revealed and that the Holy Ghost, sometimes spoken of as the Holy Spirit, and Comforter, is the third member of the Godhead, and that he, being in perfect harmony with the Father and the Son, reveals to man by the spirit of revelation and prophecy the truths of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Our great duty is so to live that we may be led constantly in light and truth by this Comforter so that we may not be deceived by the many false spirits that are in the world.

I have never troubled myself about the Holy Ghost whether he will sometime have a body or not because it is not in any way essential to my salvation. He is a member of the Godhead, with great power and authority, with a most wonderful mission which must be performed by a spirit. This has satisfied me without delving into mysteries that would be of no particular benefit.” ( Joseph Fielding Smith, Doctrines of Salvation, comp. Bruce R. McConkie, 3 vols., (Salt Lake City: Bookcraft, 1954–56), 39.)

–“In this dispensation, at least, nothing has been revealed as to [The Holy Ghost’s] origin or destiny; expressions on these matters are both speculative and fruitless.( Bruce R. McConkie, Mormon Doctrine, 2nd edition, (Salt Lake City: Bookcraft, 1966), 359. GL direct link)

–“The gift of the Holy Ghost ... quickens all the intellectual faculties, increases, enlarges, expands and purifies all the natural passions and affections; and adapts them, by the gift of wisdom, to their lawful use. It inspires, develops, cultivates and matures all the fine-toned sympathies, joys, tastes, kindred feelings, and affections of our nature. It inspires virtue, kindness, goodness, tenderness, gentleness, and charity. It develops beauty of person, form and features. It tends to health, vigor, animation, and social feeling. It invigorates all the faculties of the physical and intellectual man. It strengthens, and gives tone to the nerves. In short, it is, as it were, marrow to the bone, joy to the heart, light to the eyes, music to the ears, and life to the whole being” (Key to the Science of Theology, 9th ed. [1965], 101). (Quoted in talk by Elder Perry, Conf. Report Apr. 1997, <https://www.lds.org/general-conference/1997/04/that-spirit-which-leadeth-to-do-good?lang=eng>)

–A more expanded text of the above text, “He is an intelligent being, in the Image of God, possessing every organ, attribute, sense, sympathy, and affection that is possessed by God Himself. But these are possessed by man, in his rudimental state, in a subordinate sense of the word. Or, in other words, these attributes are in embryo, and are to be gradually developed. They resemble a bud, a germ, which gradually develops into a bloom and then, by progress, produces the mature fruit after its own kind. The Gift of the Holy Ghost adapts itself to all these organs or attributes. It quickens all the intellectual faculties, increases, enlarges, expands and purifies all the natural passions and affections and adapts them by the gift of wisdom, to their lawful use. It inspires virtue, kindness, goodness, tenderness, gentleness and charity. It develops beauty of person, form and features. It tends to give health, vigor, animation and social feeling. It invigorates all the faculties of the physical and intellectual man. It strengthens and gives tone to the nerves. In short, it is, as it were, marrow to the bone, joy to the heart, light to the eyes, music to the ears, and life to the whole being. In the presence of such persons (who have been thus affected by It), one feels to enjoy the light of their countenance, as the genial rays of a sunbeam. Their very atmosphere diffuses a thrill, a warm glow of pure gladness and sympathy of Spirit. No matter if the parties are strangers, entirely unknown to each other, each will be apt to remark in his own mind, and perhaps exclaim, when referring to the interview- “Oh, what



an atmosphere encircles that stranger! How my heart thrilled with pure and holy feelings in the presence of this person. What confidence and sympathy he inspired. His countenance and spirit gave me more assurance than a thousand written recommendations, or introductory letters.” Such is the Gift of the Holy Ghost, and such are it’s operations, when received through the lawful channel-the Divine, Eternal Priesthood.” (Parley P. Pratt, Key to the Science of Theology, pp. 101- 103)

-“It is a waste of time to speculate in relation to his jurisdiction. We know what has been revealed and that the Holy Ghost, sometimes spoken of as the Holy Spirit, and Comforter, is the third member of the Godhead, and that he, being in perfect harmony with the Father and the Son, reveals to man by the spirit of revelation and prophecy the truths of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Our great duty is so to live that we may be led constantly in light and truth by this Comforter so that we may not be deceived by the many false spirits that are in the world.

I have never troubled myself about the Holy Ghost whether he will sometime have a body or not because it is not in any way essential to my salvation. He is a member of the Godhead, with great power and authority, with a most wonderful mission which must be performed by a spirit. This has satisfied me without delving into mysteries that would be of no particular benefit.” ( Joseph Fielding Smith, Doctrines of Salvation, comp. Bruce R. McConkie, 3 vols., (Salt Lake City: Bookcraft, 1954–56), 39.)

-“In this dispensation, at least, nothing has been revealed as to [The Holy Ghost’s] origin or destiny; expressions on these matters are both speculative and fruitless.( Bruce R. McConkie, Mormon Doctrine, 2nd edition, (Salt Lake City: Bookcraft, 1966), 359. GL direct link)

## The Holy Ghost is Not Female

It is increasingly popular in some circles to say the Holy Ghost is a female member of the Godhood, perhaps Mother in Heaven. I must disagree entirely. Consider the following:

- the church plainly teaches that the holy ghost is male and is a priesthood office
- The Holy Ghost is male, the scriptures call him a he...
- seek this in the church manual on Holy Ghost, that he is a male person:  
<https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/manual/gospel-topics/holy-ghost?lang=eng>
- its contrary to priesthood and patriarchal order
- woman is next to not below the father and the son
- hebrew feminine words about holy spirit don't equate to female
- the whole thing has a feeling of feminist overreach. mens primary duty is to preach and thats what the holy ghost is, a preacher. Women's primary duty is to rear children. Any who doubt the holiness of womens roles are fools unacquainted with Godliness.
- Adam and Alma were baptized by the holy ghost, and females don't have priesthood offices required for baptism
- ive never been impressed by the spirit toward the female Holy Ghost idea.
- Joseph Smith said the holy ghost would come to get a body, therefore she isn't an exalted resurrected Goddess.

## No, The Holy Ghost Didn't Used to Have A Body

It is a popular apostate idea that the Holy Ghost had a body once, and is not having a separate situation of not having one.

They say the Holy Ghost needed to have had a body so to comfort others regarding the pains we go through on earth.

In reality, the Holy Ghost is the messenger of the Father and the Son, He is the Testator of truth. He conveys their message, it is not his own. Therefore, he needs not to have every experience to perform that function.

The only possible way I see him having a body in the past as a possibility is if he is merely awaiting his (one and only) resurrection. But this idea flies in the face of logic and revealed truth, as we know being separate from a body is a prison.

The conclusion is that the Holy Ghost must be in his pre-mortal state of the regular appointed time for such.

We do not need to perform for an eternity as a human, then as a Holy Ghost, then as a Jesus Christ, then as a Heavenly Father, each with its own accompanying mortality! We are joint heirs with Christ. We are saviors on mount Zion. Our path in the plan of salvation is TYPICAL as demonstrated by the Godhead:

In the premortal world, we testified of Christ similarly as the Holy Ghost does.

In this life, we serve others and work miracles, similar as Christ did in his mortal life.

In the post-mortal life, we will, as joint heirs with Christ, inherit all Heavenly Father has, and do whatever they do, worlds without end (and what they do is govern systems in which their ever increasing posterity live on).

So now you see, each position in the Godhead is typical of the 3 positions of the plan of salvation we are NOW passing through! Pre-mortal, mortal, and post-mortal.

Its like the book Ender's Game by Orson Scott Card. The whole time, the main character thinks he is getting ready for some future thing, but (spoiler alert!), he learns that the whole time he has been fighting the real battles. Before he "begins", it is over. Are we performing at our best now? Oh how we must! Is this not the message of the prophets? Repentance is part of our plan of salvation based on the inherent weakness designed into our flesh, but we are genuinely expected to overcome through Christ, to in reality develop Christ-like attributes in this life. The April 2021 General Conference drove this home, that we aren't just looking to become perfect in the next life, we are to obey the command to "be ye therefore perfect." Others of our race have developed Christ's attributes, and therefore, so can, and so must, we. It is within our capacity. Well did Joseph Smith teach that if we are to expect to gain salvation, we must get it in the same way that Christ got it, by obedience to law (see TPJS).

So what then do we make of this and other Adam-God related theories, supposedly taught in the past by leaders of the church? We dismiss them on their grounds of not squaring with the scriptures nor the words of the living prophets. To express these views is to demonstrate a lack of spiritual knowledge and maturity.

## Scriptural Serpent Symbol : Christs Truth & Satan's Imitation

- Moses lifted up such as a type of Christ in the wilderness for people to look to it and live
- used to have legs for it was given him a curse to go on his belly. He would not be on his belly already if that was not the case. Although, this may all be symbolic.
- women naturally have a fear of snakes. An enmity between them and snakes.
- type of Christ which Satan is subverting; God creates, Satan imitates.
- 2Ne24:29 Fiery flying serpent=type of Christ footnote
- Ogden OT vol. 1 pg43 and Moses 4:10-11
- counterfeit symbol used by Satan
- Matt.10:16 serpent is wise, and disciples commanded to be wise as such

## A Poem Contemplating Eternity

Are we supposed to harness what we like or to find the correct things to like? I suppose a little bit of both is true we need to align our moral standards with the gospel while pursuing our talents and hobbies and interests; one of the Divine things that we need to do is find happiness.

In the beginning there were unorganized intelligence, then we became organized. That process goes on to this day. We want to be more organized intelligence; I see that there is no excuse and the organization of one's self is so critical.

I see that any person including myself can and should and ought to, within the perfect parameters of reason, create things that change the world forever.

These creations are not told to you by someone else; it's something that you determine; you create them and they are Divine and you don't need any help; you can't wait around sitting for someone to tell you what to do; you have to act on every little inclination.

Read every book that comes to your attention, spell out every idea that comes to your mind, talk to every person that seems like someone you need to talk to.

God will let you suffer more bitterly than you ever thought possible because you need to experience exactly what you don't want to experience, and to question the one thing that you should never question. If you can pass through that, you can be free.

You can open the doors of the mind and find expression and meaning in deeper levels than you even knew existed.

You can embrace forms of intelligence; you can find never tapped into dimensions of joy; what you wanted, but didn't know where to look for.

You'll be more tired and more depressed; more happy and full of energy; you'll be who you forever aspired to be.

When everything seems for nothing, just then, it all bursts open into a panoramic view of divinity; not just a Divinity sitting in the sky watching you, but a Divinity that wells up inside you, and bursts and permeates the atmosphere around you.

This is when the Divinity that does sit above looking down smiles for a moment.

It doesn't have to make sense right now, you just have to keep going.

Then it's quiet, and you are alone again. You try to remember how it felt to be alive.

Then you stop caring, because feelings seem to be second class citizens in the world of desperation. The suffering of the world comes painfully into view.

Then you ponder and wait, and sometimes you see him again - around the corner of your eyes, you meet for a moment, and you know everything will be okay.

He reminds you in that instant that former things are over, and there's no going back. You are free, but the past gives you the motivation you need to contemplate the future. The permission and the power to not be mortally wounded by it anymore. Nay no more, not by the past, the present, or the future. The force fields of glory today burst upon thee!

## Straining at Mansions Highlights



I share the

This lecture focused on the history of Western philosophy and religion's treatment of the doctrine of pre-mortality. It brings not only historical understanding, but deeper insights into pre-mortality, and evidences for the same.

When we live beneath our truest self, we are sharply aware that we have betrayed ourselves.

What prompts repentance is not thought of the future but thought of the past the idea that we are not living up to what we truly are that we are not manifesting what we are at our core what we once were. This is what inspires people to suddenly make major life altering decisions to change their lives for the better the sense of knowing that we betrayed our potential our nature ourselves.

John Knox speaks of the reference to the self as being evidence of a birth before birth that we are an entity which has existed before birth. We can easily refer to ourselves and contemplate ourselves this is evidence that the I goes deeper than the date of birth. The sentence I was born suggests that the I superseded the being born

We long for God because he exists on the same plane as all of our deepest loves and exists in the memory all of this suggests that we knew him once. Our inner yearnings can only be satiated with him.

Those who seek God and happiness must have been happy once. to remember that means it must have been imprinted on the memory at some point. this suggests that we once knew God and true happiness, that is why we are seeking it oh, both the happiness and God, it is why we associate the one with the other because we used to know them both simultaneously they only existed simultaneously.

Nature and art constantly remind you of something. Augustus said that these faint intimations suggest a life before Earth where we lived in God's presence.

The removal of God from comprehensibility to incomprehensibility and from accessibility to inaccessibility as well as the doctrine of creation ex nihilo have contributed to the erasure of pre mortality from doctrines of churches today.

Immanuel Kant implied a premortal existence as a rational basis for the concept of human agency

Edward Beecher in the 19th century wrote almost a thousand pages on the topic of pre mortality as a rationale for the justice of God. it explains our immersion in a life of sin pain and suffering.

Someone said that perhaps reason is to skin deep and science does not go back far enough. In other words this suggests that there are things more profound than human reason.

Our ability to comprehend microscopic subatomic particles and macroscopic theories of the creation and of themselves are evidence but the human being is a much more powerful and complex and ancient creature than mere reason could suggest.

It is a truism to say that the most primitive man drew a picture of the monkey but the most intelligent monkey cannot draw a picture of a man the human is something different something special something deeper and farther beyond the rest of the animal kingdom

The human creature is truly unique and different from all other creatures

The emergence of the human mind cannot be explained in the same methods of the emergence of the minds of all other animals

## Particles of Light: Premortal Life and the of Memory by Terryl Givens – Lecture

following highlights with permission of the author.

What it means to be human is to take seriously the subjective the inner the personal experience of an individual human being  
Our private hopes and private experience is what ultimately defines us.

Keats spoke of straining at particles of light spoke of being in the dark and straining at particles of light.

Even Freud acknowledged that everyone has a desire to connect to reconnect with something eternal and oceanic. This is why the doctrine of pre-existing has never fully died out.

There are things more fundamentally human than syllogistic argument.

Emperor's priests and secularists have tried to expunge the idea of pre-existence from Western thought but yet it persists.

The oldest religion we know of is that of Mesopotamia they speak of the gods convening to create the humans; It speaks of a minor race of deities being on the earth doing the work of the supreme gods; They dig the land move around the Earth tends to those things what's the labor become so great that they conspire against the seven supreme gods. They decide to make humans out of clay tabernacles and I take one of the gods and sacrifice that God and put his Spirit into the humans. The Mesopotamian legend says that our memory of our earlier existence remains but it's very cloudy so that we don't threaten the dominion of the gods.

The Greek philosopher (Aristotle?) laments how he has fallen from greatness to come to Earth how things used to be better but now there's toil; he wrote that human love is an echo I've been earlier love of perfect beauty; he said beauty can only be experienced by someone who has seen as much in heaven; he speaks of how when one finds their soulmate they want to be together but how every person even who has found this soul mate yet longs for something greater.

Tertullian thought that the doctrine of pre-existence was dangerous because it made us too much like God.

Tertullian said 'how could we forget all of that premortal stuff? There must not be premortality.' The Cambridge platonists responded to Tertullian's doubt of pre mortality, 'why is it surprising that we would forget premortality when even during this life we forget so much?'

Henry Moore was certain of the pre mortality that the mind could remember God

He spoke of this memory being natural and essential to the soul of man and that this memory cannot be washed away. He wrote that pre mortality is the most logical explanation

Benjamin Whichcoat(?) and Nathaniel Coverwell(?): They speak of seeds of light scattered in The souls of man which brings forth a numerous and sparkling posterity.

Descartes also speaks of these things.

Kant says there are only two things was really astound him the starry skies above and the moral law inside him he ponders on wear that moral law inside him could have come from. It was not a simple social or cultural acquisition.

He speaks of an intuitive sense of self this is not a logical button intuitive thing.

He says that a being with infinite nature infinite potential could not have just come into being by happenstance, a being so great whose Life begin in such trivial circumstance.

He says that we lived in a world of spiritual nature's which didn't begin at birth and will not end at death.

Babylonians say that the veil between us and God was for the gods to keep us away from them but Christians say that that veil is an act of Mercy on behalf of God.

The English poet Abel Evans conceived of the entire human race being the fallen Angels. He says that God cast us all out but lets us expiate our crimes with time served on Earth.

Reason and memory feed but cannot satisfy our articulate longing for home

he speaks of how if we had retained our memory of the prior existence we would have been all the more miserable on this Earth due to the contrast of how great it is there and how difficult it is here.

Goethe said that there were stages of pre-existence on the way to a glorious future. He spoke of his memories of the pre-existence being so strong that it is the greatest evidence for God. he said if there is not a god perhaps there will yet be one.

In the romantic era we hear Wordsworth who writes of trailing clouds Of Glory to come to this earth how being born on this Earth was not the beginning. Latter-day saints celebrate this poetry, but generations of scholars have been embarrassed by it. He speaks of how despite the beauty of this earth and the joy of the laughter of children there is yet in this life a sense of nagging loss. He speaks of how certain things have passed away. He speaks of how our birth is a loss of a greater Eden that we once knew. Some pressured Wordsworth to let go of this view of pre-existence and he was embarrassed about it sometimes but he still argued that there was nothing in Scripture to contradict it. He says that if we remembered the pre-existence everyone would bear testimony of it.

The idea of pre mortality starts from inner reflection an event such as watching a sleeping child. This and not logical deduction is the starting point of faith in pre mortality.

Wilhelm Benefit (?) (about 35 min in to hear again how to spell that name) was a businessman stricken by a tragedy lost his wife and child and could not understand why life involve so much suffering then a mysterious mentor appeared and taught him that this life is a short time between pre mortality and immortality. He spoke of this man having an apostolic countenance.

Original sin and human suffering can really only be explained by the doctrine of pre mortality this is what 1 renowned philosopher argued named Benica(?)

Because this is a fallen world and the otherworld is an eternal one there is to be Revelation if there is to be any communication between the realms.

Our powers of reason and sensation are insufficient to penetrate the eternal world.

Religions of the western world are so inhospitable to the doctrine of pre mortality that people reject the idea without a good reason.

John chapter 9 is one of the many scriptural allusions to pre mortality

the apostles clearly assumed that there was a pre-existing life when they asked who sinned this man or his parents. Some say that this simplistic explanation pre mortality for this chapter is too simple but those who value spirituality simplicity has never been a barrier to beauty.

Kant said that one of the proofs that we have human agency is that when he does something wrong he feels guilt that guilt suggests that he could have done something different.

[Click here](#) for the full lecture.

## We Still Have Our Spirit Bodies (It's Not a Separate Thing)

Jacob Vidrine shared

I think we started out as intelligences eternal self existing living entities and we agreed to join God's family and undergo the process of spiritual procreation to receive a spirit body like God's -- the Divine Image. Then we come here to receive a physical tabernacle to clothe our spirit body with flesh and we have both.

We don't make the intelligence, that part is eternal and always existed  
We take intelligences and make them spirit children.

And the second death: Stripped of both physical body and spirit body and thrown back to being a raw intelligence

## Life circumstances: some elected, some assigned

10.18.22

If you're a good person then your circumstances are for your blessing. If bad, for your cursing, in other words, the correct amount you need to grow. If you feel disadvantaged in life, know that in the life before this, you chose a hard thing because it has to be done for the good of all. Bless you for doing it! There are others of course who are full of hate and slothfulness, their circumstances were perhaps more assigned than elected. But we know this: all things work together for good to them that love God. And I'll say further: any person who wishes we'll on humanity and serves to any extent, God bless you!

## A Vision Given to Mosiah Hancock (about 1855)

This was reprinted in a book called "Pre-Existence" by Odgen Kraut (free at ogdenkraut.com). Here is Kraut's introduction and the full vision following: "One man's vision of the pre-existence is perhaps more revealing than all else written on the subject. The following vision was given to Mosiah Hancock, born in Kirtland, Ohio, in 1834. He knew the Prophet Joseph Smith and lived a long and devoted life defending the Gospel of Jesus Christ as it had been revealed to him."

A Vision Given to Mosiah Hancock (about 1855)

When about twenty-one years of age, I was permitted by the power of God, to go into His presence and into my former abode. I saw the Eternal Father on His throne and His wives on His left side, all shining in glory; I saw the Savior and knew Him. It takes the power of the Holy Ghost to tell the difference between the Father and the Son, they look so much alike. Jesus said: "Mosiah, I have brought you here to show you how it was before you went to the earth." I had

been to the earth; everything looked so natural and familiar. I seemed to have been a companion of the Savior and talked with Him like a friend. Again, He spoke to me and said: "Look and see man as he came forth." I looked in the direction indicated and saw an innumerable line of God's children extending further than I could see. They were arranged in pairs, male and female, and passed in front of the Eternal Father who named them; and they were clad in long white robes with girdles tied around the waists; each pair seemed to have been created mates. <One sentence placed here was left out because it was not readable.>

[138] When thus clothed, they were arranged in classes of about two hundred; the males sitting in front and the females behind them. They were taught in the arts and sciences, and everything necessary to make the heart happy. The teachers of the classes received the instruction they imparted from certain notable ones, who in turn got their directions from the Father and the Son. I thought I was one to overlook the classes; I also saw Joseph, Brigham, and many others engaged in this work of education. I thought as some became more efficient than others they were advanced from class to class. I thought my name was Mosiah, and the names of the other brethren there were the same as upon the earth. All at once there was a gathering of these spirits and the voice of the Great Eternal (for that is what we called God there) spoke: "Oh, ye my children," and His voice penetrated throughout space, so countless were His offspring. "We have an earth prepared for you, on which you can dwell and have a chance to come up, thru obeying our Heavenly laws."

I there heard the question asked: "Who will go down and set an example of humility and faithfulness to these my children, that they may be brought, thru obedience to our laws, back into our presence?"

I thought I saw one in the express image of the Father say, "Father, I will go down and set a pattern of humility and patience that your children, thru my example, may be brought back again." How noble, I thought, He looked when He offered Himself so patient before the children of our Father.

I saw another, who seemed to be a very high military officer who arose and said: "I will go down to yonder earth and surely I will bring all your children back to you so none of them shall be lost."

The plan of the first was accepted as being the only sure plan for an exaltation. The plan of the second was rejected with great kindness; but the second was not [139] satisfied; and while the first stood in great humility by the side of the Father, the second with many who stood in with him, went about among the Heavenly hosts to advocate the plan, that was put forth as the rights of the second. This one was Lucifer, a son of the morning, for many had been with the Father for countless ages, and learned their lessons well, and he had been no dull scholar. Finally Lucifer openly rebelled against the Father and the Son, and six other mighty ones who stood faithful with them and declared, "I will have it my way." I saw the faithful ones gather around the Father and the Son, and Lucifer's workers gathered around him, when one of the notable ones, who was called Michael, arose and said, "We will decide the contest." It seemed that a platform was extended into space, upon which we could operate, by what power I could not tell. We who were faithful to the Father and the Son, had a white star upon us, and the others chose a red star; about one third of the males and females would not accept of either star, but withdrew from the conflict, the females taking the males by the arm, said, "Come, let us not take part with either side. Let us retire." <This sentence was changed to clarify its meaning, although the meaning was not changed in any way.> (When they were cast out after the manner of spiritual warfare,) they had no power to return. When they were all cleared from the platform and Satan and his followers were all cast down, their female companions wept, and we all wept.

No females took part against the Father and the Son, but all took sides in their favor, except the neutral ones already mentioned. After the tears were dried from our eyes, the voice of the Great Eternal spoke again and said, "Hear, O ye my children;" His voice penetrating the immensity of space so that all could hear it; it is decreed by the Great Eternal that the females shall not follow their males in their banishment, but for every male that has kept his first estate and fought valiantly for the Father and the Son, there are two females. Again it is decreed that those males who have taken no part in this great conflict shall keep their females and a race of servants shall they be."

[140] I then saw that the notable ones who had taken such an interest in the rights of the Father and the Son, were appointed to gather up those lone females whose companions had been cast down. They were again placed in classes,



each man having two females in the ranks behind him. I there saw that they were again taught in their classes, which now contained about three hundred. I next saw Michael and his companion proceed a long way off, to people the earth where Lucifer and his followers had been cast. As time passed, other notable ones followed as they were appointed. During all this time the classes met frequently, being taught by instructors appointed. Each member knew his or her own place, and took it each time, and the best of order prevailed.

They were asked, first the males, and then the females behind them, "Will you obey the Gospel of Jesus Christ, when you go to that earth?" Some would answer, Yes, but not all. Some would be asked, Will you obey that law which placed the Gods on high? And in very few cases I would hear the females say, "I want my own mate." Sometimes the question would be asked of a male, "Will you Obey that higher law? and he would answer, "I wish to enjoy myself with the females." Sometimes when the question would be asked of the female, she would reply, "I wish to enjoy myself with the males." Again the question would be asked of the males, "If you will not join the Church of Christ, what do you wish to be? He would sometimes say, "I wish to be a judge, or an officer of high rank among the people." Then he would be asked, "Will you sustain the laws of God and also the rights of all mankind?" and the answer in every instance was, "yes."

I saw there that those who were proficient in their classes were advanced more rapidly until they became most perfect in those heavenly teachings, but some males, even there in Heaven would neglect their females and their classes and not meet with them. They would go off, arm in arm, as men now go, not having any desire for their duties. I never saw a female leave her place in the class assigned her by the Heavenly powers.

[141] I saw Abraham, when he came back from the earth, and many of the notable ones, when they came back to be crowned. I saw them step upon the platform of the Gods and receive their crowns, and enter into their exaltations. At last I saw the time when Joseph was to go forth, and the voice of the Great Eternal said, "Oh, my neglected daughters, gather around these my faithful servants who have been faithful in teaching you the principles of righteousness and of our kingdom, that others may come up and have the chance to be glorified." I saw many of them gather around Joseph and form a ring with him and the Savior in the center. They made a covenant with him that they would meet him on the earth and help him establish that great work upon the earth. I saw many of them gather around Brigham Young, John Taylor, Wilford Woodruff, and many other notable ones, and around many who have not become so notable. They formed rings around each of them with Christ in the center each time, for He rehearsed to them the Covenant. They would take each other by the hand, in the circle, and bow their faces down to Him, in the center, and in the most solemn manner agree to meet them here, until every one of those neglected daughters was provided for; and they were filled with such joy that their songs made a paradise of the realm.

At last the time came for me to go to the earth. The Savior came to me and said, "Mosiah, it is time for you to prepare to go. You have been faithful so long here, it is time for you to go, that you may return and be as we are." As I beheld Him, I thought, "How is it that I am not as you are now?" For it seemed, that I knew nothing of the earth, of the changes a probation there would make in me. However, I said, "Who will go down to that earth, and be my father, and help me that I may be brought in the ways of truth and righteousness?" A male by the name of Levi stepped forth, in the presence of the Son, and said, "I will go down to yonder earth, and by the help of the Great Eternal, I will try to do as well by you as you have done for me, for I am grateful to you for all your kindness [142] to me." He returned to his place, being an instructor of a class. I was one among others who was appointed to instruct him and the other teachers of classes. A female came out of the class and bowing before the Savior and me, said, "I will go down and be your mother."

In a short time the man disappeared and was immediately followed by the woman. I knew my departure was near at hand and I asked, "If on my return I could have the same position I then held." Then the Savior said, "Yes, and greater, but you have to go down to the earth, and take a lowly position and be misunderstood by man, even your brethren and endure many hardships and set many examples of humility and patience, that you may return and enter the glory, even such as I have."

He then added, "Your time is now come to take your mission to the earth," and He laid His hands on my head, as He had done to others, and set me apart for that important mission. He again said to me, "I will see you safely thru until you return again." I fully believe on that promise. <This sentence was changed to clarify its meaning, although the



meaning was not changed in any way.> It seemed as though a way was opened before me, and I dived down toward the earth with the speed of lightening and awoke while sailing thru space. The end.

## FALL OF ADAM & SALVATION IN CHRIST

“All mankind may be saved by obedience to the laws and ordinances of the gospel.”



## The Laws of Justice and Mercy: Redemption of Past Sins, & The Requirement to Develop Godly Attributes

Gabriel Owen shared a higher level of thinking about justice and mercy:

The law of Justice is that, we get exactly what we deserve, and because Jesus lived a perfect life, and we did not, we could never receive the same reward. However, the Law of Mercy allows that, even though we did not live perfectly, if we repent and overcome (so that our character, fits among the Gods) then Jesus covers our old debt and allows us to dwell as his "joint-heirs"

If our character is offensive to the Gods, we will dwell in a lesser kingdom of glory.

## The Number 7

7 heavens spoken of in epistis Sophia, and by Joseph Smith

7 layers of rainbow

7 continents from pangea

7 marks of Christ's atonement

## Theory on The Eden Transgression: Who Gave Instruction

Adam was told not to eat it by God. Eve was told not to eat it by her husband. She wasn't as accountable therefore, wasn't directly disobeying God.

## Theory on Light from Dark

separating light from dark as meaning creation of the spirit world and dividing the people there

## The Fall of Adam and the Natural Man - Hyrum Andrus Lecture Highlights (PoGP L5)

<https://youtu.be/7MgQNmZmOuU>

WW Phelps said they got the seeds for the garden of Eden from Kolob if he has any right to say that.

Life on Earth came due to the procreative process.

God is our progenitor. Go back in your genealogy far enough and he is there.

His opinion is that fragments from other worlds were taken to make this the redemptive world.

The four beasts in the Book of Revelation represent saved animals from other worlds why would they be spoken of when they don't have to do it this world this is an evidence that this Earth could be made from fragments of other earths.

God is red in the face angry with what we are doing with our world.

Adam had an endowment of intelligence and power he was alive spiritually this is why it was easy for him to name the animals in one day etc.

If you've not been born again and got your life in order with Christ and have the spirit you're less than half a man.

You have not been made whole as the Lord said he did with Enos in the Book of Mormon.

Receiving the revelations of the spirit and living by them and getting the peace and the flow of the spirit this is when we are a whole man not just when we are intellectuals.

Brigham Young said when Christ returns it will first be to the land of America where he started Eden.

It is in America that mankind must overcome the fall then it is extended to Jerusalem.

Adam and Eve was the place to which Adam fled after being driven out of the garden of Eden in Jackson county.

Far west is where Cain killed Abel.

We do have a revelation that says far west is Holy ground.

D&C 117 Adam-Oni-Ahman etc. is the land where Adam dwelt.

Several spoke of this being the value where Adam blessed his children.

Some heard Joseph teach that the ark was built in the Carolina.

Joseph taught that Enoch's city was built in the Gulf of Mexico.

America is where the Genesis of mankind took place it will also be where the Genesis of the second coming takes place.

We have to establish Mount Zion then the Jewish people are brought in later

It's only after the Jews receive all the blessings of the gospel and temples and the Church of the firstborn after all this that Christ comes in glory.

Liberty and America was born as a gift of God it did not come from humanist's secularists grapes or Romans and humankind is not at its best right now we have this idea that we've done everything on our own and we're awesome but in reality we are falling and we need redemption we don't know that we need redemption because we don't know that we are fallen.

Liberty was achieved as a fruit of the spirit resulting from faith.

Some try to rationalize and say that there was no death in Eden but there was death going on in the world outside of Eden before the fall this is not true there was no death on Earth period before the fall.

Adversity is necessary in order for righteousness to be brought to pass it was fundamental in the life of Job and Christ and Joseph Smith we should not think that if we're living righteous we're just going to be blessed with climbing the economic social and political ladders.

The book of Abraham says we are here on Earth to be proved. We are not here to be tested because a test implies that you don't know something but the Lord knows all things. The foreknowledge of God is so detailed that he knew what clothes you were going to wear this day and where you were going to sit this day. Proved means to run you through a series of experiences to bring out what is there to the surface. To actually demonstrate in fact and substance. The proving process is what is required to bring the past righteousness and it requires adversity.

It's true that Eve was deceived but it's also true that she knew enough about the situation intelligently that she knows she needed to do it and you must understand that it was willingly done and this is inherent in the book of Moses.

Joy means having been away from home for a long time and then coming back to enjoy what you had.

We have been away from God and we've been seeking to fill that void and when we return to God we have joy.

The joy of redemption is to come back to the Lord to fill the redemption of the spirit to feel like a human being again. Joy is when you know you are a child of God that he has you in the palm of his hand.

Transgression is break a law where as soon as to willfully yield to the influence of the adversary knowingly or unknowingly and the situation in Eden was transgression not sin and not a mistake.

The sun became the light for the Earth at the fall.

At the fall the Earth was removed from its prior location.

In pre-mortality we saw others come to Earth and we wanted to follow that example we prayed to heavenly Father to come here.

The time will come said Joseph Smith that Earth will return next to Kolob and be second in size to it and that there are parts of it that have been broken off - and Andrus said I had better not talk about those parts  
[Note he is probably referring to groups of people leaving on those parts who will return]

When Adam was removed from Eden he did not lose a knowledge from what it was like to be with God and Eden any more than Joseph Smith lost a knowledge after walking home from the first vision.

The scripture says that after the people listen to Satan and love Satan more than God it was at that point that men became Colonel Central and devilish thus we see that before that it was not the case so Adam is not the person who made this life Colonel Central and devilish Adam got us out of the presence of God but it's only when we yield to Satan that we become Colonel sensual and devilish.

In Christ we live and we move we cannot have sustained organized life without Christ all life would cease to be it see also first John or John 1 the spirit of Christ gives life to every person.

The atonement became operative the second Adam left Eden.

Teachings of Joseph Page 190 something about covenant being made between three people and atonement beginning.

Thanks to Christ we are held in suspension between glory and perdition and we can use our moral agency to go down or up.

The Constitution was written to protect agency so we could work together as free people it was not written for welfare state to cuddle us from womb to tomb.

The Constitution is for All flesh not just Americans says the scripture.

The Christian laws to love your neighbor as yourself economically as well as in social matters.

Transgression brought the fall on the fall brought death.

The powers of the spirit are dominant so if Adam was in the presence of God and are taking of the element of this world he still wouldn't have died [Note this must be why resurrected beings can eat as the risen Christ demonstrated].

The question of whether people are inherently good or inherently bad is a nonsense question.  
You must consider the nature of the body and the nature of the spirit and the nature of the influence of the Lord and the nature of the influence of the devil. Everyone on Earth was victorious in the war before Earth they passed the minimum bar required of basic goodness. Children are innocent. There are no illegitimate children there are only illegitimate parents. The spirit has voluntarily submitted to come to Earth in the fallen State.

Based on how we were in pre-mortality that's how we will be on this earth some people were God's in pre-mortality and come to this earth and our God's on this earth such as Enoch Abraham Moses Joseph Smith. Joseph Smith taught the plurality of Gods and that he was the God of this dispensation, This is part of why the mob killed him.

God created man and woman as one unit to start with.

A real man makes his wife feel more womanly and a real woman makes her husband feel more manly.

Power derives from organization.

The revelations which will save our spirits will save our bodies we receive Revelations to the spirit.

Pray till you sweat to the Lord to give you his Spirit consistently.

Atonement allows agency in this suspended time of the Fall.

Freedom is the basic ability to choose Liberty is the good choice the spiritual direction and we have lost this idea in modern times and it is what gives the Constitution power.

We are translating Liberty into license this is the final stage of the breakdown of a free society and will result in violence.

## Youth Repentance & The Doctrine of Christ in the D&C - Hyrum Andrus Lecture Highlights

[https://youtu.be/cD2Tg\\_dd-dI](https://youtu.be/cD2Tg_dd-dI)

President Benson said never before hasn't been so much expected of the righteous in such short time.

President Benson said many of the youth today are the noble and great ones and we must help them know that.

You'll be judged for your thoughts this is obvious because at the end of your life it will have been a reflection of your thoughts it's like the food you eat you don't remember every meal but it is all a part of you.

We should all help our neighbors and give suggestions of better ways to do things but the official authority and calling to cry repentance is a priesthood thing and those who have this calling give an account of the mornings they gave at the judgment.

President Benson said the eyes of billions are upon us at this choice time.

Repentance is not just a healing process it is a Divine process through Christ we are in a fallen State and we need Christ's help repentance not only helps with serious sins but it helps us become more Christlike.

D&C says the righteous will be blessed with commandments note once Elder Bednar in a footnote to one of his talks said we should pray for more commandments to keep

Have a quiet place to pray and study and think about who you are and should be.

There are 6 scriptural (not humanistic) R's of repentance

The 6 R's of Repentance #1. Recognition of Christ. This means like Alma says believe that he's going to come and judge you etc. There's a divine video tape of all your actions and thoughts which will have to be reviewed but it can be edited.

Joseph Smith saw the column of light like fire and he was afraid because he thought he was going to be burned but then he saw it didn't burn the trees so he took comfort.

The glory of light intelligence power and truth possessed by a divine being can be turned on or off the person can go unrecognized when he wishes like the road to Emmaus.

At Gethsemane Christ consented to have the divine power withdrawn from him but at this time the power of the adversary to send it upon him.

When a person sends the most important thing that happens is the withdrawal of the spirit of God.



The 6 R's of Repentance #2. Remorse for sin.

Christ loves us and beckons us to come to him he says he will take away our remorse and guilt fill us with love

The 6 R's of Repentance #3. Resolve to come to Christ.

The person who comes to Christ is the truest man the truest woman this is our best self this is our most dignified use of agency.

God studies us and watches us same way like pupils in a room of viewers where observers are on the other side of the mirrors and The observers are unseen.

The scripture says all things are before mine eyes. He sees us better than we can see each other.

By the power of his glory god is omnipresent.

Go to people and tell them I am sorry I'll do whatever I can to make it up do this over and over it is humbling but a cleansing comes from it

Then go to the Lord and tell him you have done this and ask for his forgiveness and he will forgive.

Repentance renews us and fills us with love and new life.

You cannot repent without faith because repentance is the fruit of faith in.

Spend time in the Book of Mormon focused on the parts which teach the doctrine of Christ and you will find Christ and as a result you will feel happy and good.

(Looks like my notes don't have all 6 R's of Repentance, I'll have to update that.)

## The Divine Conception of Christ

Brigham taught that Jesus was begotten by the father, not by the holy ghost. However, the details of this are debated.

Some say it was by natural means.

Some say that would be too carnal, that she remained a virgin even after the conception.

The Book of Mormon says she was carried away for a time.

The new testament says she was a virgin after conception.

There is the possibility of seeing type of cloning. She could have been the serogate mother of Christ, not contributing her DNA.

Somehow, Christ inherited things from Mary, not just God. He could live forever or die. This suggests perhaps that he did get half of his DNA from Mary.

Some say resurrected beings do not marry mortals.

Mary 'knew no man', how could she conceive? The annunciation of Gabriel was therefore preparatory, she "shall" conceive, it hadn't happened yet.

Was there courting before the marriage? Anciently the answer is often no. One of true integrity needs no introduction, no lengthy courting. Ayn Rand has a good essay on this in one of her books.

## Meaning of the Atonement – Cleon Skousen Lecture Highlights

Notes on a lecture found here:

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xZ1DqEYohnE&list=PLIC7AHN3uipOJLgEf66i0u3imwjaFk0N>

See Cleon's book *The First 2000 Years* an Appendix called *Why Was The Atonement Necessary* (pg352) for the write up this lecture is based on. Cleon's mission president was Elder Widstoe who put him on a long (about a decade or two) scripture chase to find this out, occasionally giving hints of where to look. He complied his findings as instructed by Widstoe in his book.

Mark 14:36

Christ is told: All you created will go back to chaos if you don't perform the atonement, but you have the choice. He chose to do it.

Luke 22:44

Matt 26 thy will be done

2 Ne. 2:14

D&C 93:30

Your I Am is an always existing little intelligence in you.

Intelligence is independent (verse)

Abe. 3:19-23

DHC 4:519 Joseph Smith: says he taught a thing but doesn't explain it, we read the others on what he said.

JD 7:2 Brigham Young: element receives Intelligence

There are 2 building blocks: things to act and things to be acted upon.

Element is to be acted upon.

Intelligence is to act.

Mormon 9:19 God could cease  
Jesus says honor is his power.  
his intelligences would lose

commands it has Intelligence  
2 Ne. 9:7-9 what happens if  
naked intelligence. Lord said  
never authorized that.

Alma 34:11 one can't pay for  
x sin. Jon kills, we don't call it  
is one infinitely (universally)  
compassion in us all. It's that  
say "you died for him, if he



Alma 42 God could cease to be god  
to be god

He is a god of love but also of justice or  
confidence in him.

Abe. 4:9,10,12,14 element responds to

there wasn't an atonement. Be cast back  
never teach they get a second chance I've

another. Atonement isn't x suffering for  
ok if Tom pays Tom's life for it. The key  
loved is sacrificed so as to trigger  
persuasive, so those who are offended  
means that much to you, ok, I no longer

hold him to it"

See around min 103.

(Note: I'm not sure on this point, there is the verse by Amulek saying one can't pay for another, but there are many teachings that it is an x amount of debt paid for. Perhaps there's truth in both.)

When you cry being touched when hearing something that's the spirit talking to you that k god for having spoken to you.

The name of the son, not the father, is the only be we gain salvation by. Father couldn't save us.

We force, but God talks, and is obeyed.

Once dead, Jesus became the Christ. Only once he won the fight. He was terrified and asked for a way out, but chose to follow through when he saw there was no other way to save his creations.

D&C 45:3

Abe Lincoln showed compassion overcoming justice. A man sentenced to die was spared as he was the only surviving son of a mother.

After the atonement complete Christ was very excited about it that he pulled it off he told people not to waste it.

Growing up Jesus learned more about what it meant to be the son of God and have that power. He commanded things and they obeyed. He wrote and thanked his father for showing him that power.

## God Has No Opposite!

God isn't worried. The Devil is God's Devil. He is on a leash. There is no opposite to God! He is above all! Satan is Michael's opposite. God permits the chaos; God uses sin sinlessly. God allows agency to all, and some use it for evil, and this allowance is part of God's plan to try us in the face of adversity, though God does step in when things get really bad. Sometimes, God's justice comes in after death, but it does come to all. Agency allows a just judgement. Faith in God means trust, trust that He is in charge, and that all will be well if we follow his team rather than Satans promises. There is no opposite to God, no chance that He will lose. At this level, there is no 'dualism', or 'competition'.

Now I am aware of some alternative theories, we can chat about those. But the message remains the same: The gods of the universe are the ones in control, and though the opposition is real, the Elohim council of the gods who preside in the cosmos on every level shall not fail!

## The Atonement of Jesus Christ: Teachings of the Prophets

-Jesus the Christ by Talmage says Christ on cross at 9am, then at noon the clouds darken, from 12-3 he is suffering all that happened in Gethsemane but "intensified". Fetal position is the way we are in our most pain; the cross pain was intensified more than Gethsemane perhaps because he could not be in the fetal position.

-Isaiah says Christ's face became marred more than any other man.

-Isaiah says they plucked off Christ's hair.

-the word Gethsemane: shemen is oil, geth is press, it means olive/oil press.

-Matthew 26:38 severe depression; Jesus feels such pain that he feels he is going to die.

-imagine an olive getting crushed by a large rock, this is like what the Atonement was.

-sins don't bring pleasure, they bring weight consequences, hence the Atonement of Christ had a crushing weight on him.

-D&C 19 says if we repent we won't suffer; God is saying that he suffered to a greater degree for our sins than we have ever known. Jesus went through hell for us, suffering the pains of a damned soul.

-D&C 76:107 Jesus experiences the fullness of God's wrath in the Atonement.

-Elder Maxwell said that Jesus is more intelligent than the combined intelligence of the rest of the human race. Where much is given much is required. Abraham speaks of the pre-mortal intelligences, Jesus was the greatest of them all.

-“Thus, such was the torturing pressure of this intense, this indescribable agony, that it burst forth abroad beyond the confines of His body, convulsed all nature and spread throughout all space” (John Taylor, Mediation and Atonement, 151–52; Quoted in the Doctrines of the Gospel student manual Ch 9 on the Atonement at <https://www.lds.org/manual/doctrines-of-the-gospel-student-manual/chapter-9-the-atonement-of-jesus-christ?lang=eng>); Thus we see that the Atonement hurt him so bad it was more than just bodily pain, he experienced all sorts of pain which only a God can to the extent he did.

-Elder Faust said that Jesus was crying in Gethsemane, his tears mingling with his blood.

-Elder Maxwell speaks of the angel strengthening Christ in the Atonement being Adam, I believe another source says otherwise, Seth or Abel perhaps.

-Brigham Young taught that when Jesus walked into Gethsemane God cast a veil over Gethsemane, hence Jesus in there would say as we see in Matthew 26 that he thinks he is going to die there. Also Jesus would not have bled if God was with him.

-Jacob says Abraham and Isaac are a similitude of God and Christ in the Atonement, it would perhaps be harder to be the father slaying his son, than the son submitting to the will of the father in all things. Hence Jesus says, “Glory be to the Father”.

-when you study about the Atonement, you get the desire to be nice to everyone and be good. Try it.

-when you understand Christ’s sacrifice more, you’ll have more internal change; like Alma the younger feeling the pains of a damned soul, then having Jesus deliver him, recognizing then and forever the role of Jesus Christ in the Atonement for us.

-when you think of Jesus’ Atonement, you want to not be as flippant about the attitude “I can sin now and repent later”, you want to be more careful about your actions, more thoughtful about what you do.

-when you feel uplifted by Christ, those are the times to make your life decisions, don’t make deceptions in depression times.

-Jesus is the only one who has walked out life path, so trust him have faith in him.

-Jesus was a pre-mortal God without a body, just like the Holy Ghost is currently a God, must be pre-mortal, without a body. Then Jesus condescends, he comes to earth, he is a baby dependent on his mother entirely.

-the angel came to the Christ in the atonement and said perhaps you don’t have to do this but if you don’t all things you created those worlds, animals, humans, plants, etc., go back to inexistence, back to dust. You don’t have to do this; the Father knew you would do it that’s why He sent you. The only way to complete the Father’s will is by doing this.

-Christ wept after healing Lazarus from death perhaps in realizing how much God the Father would do for him, what being “The Son” is all about.

-why does salvation come only through the Son, not the Father? Only the name of Jesus Christ? It’s because Jesus Christ created us.

-the atonement is infinite; in Alma 34:11-12 it says that when one is killed, the life of the murderer is required. AKA, every guilty person must pay. Thus the atonement of Christ had to not just be representative, he had to literally take upon himself the punishment for each and every crime committed. Every debt had to be paid. Every crime had to be punished. Christ stood in the place for all of the murderers not all at once, but one by one. Each beating was mandated for justice to be realized. God is just. “He that ruleth over men must be just” cried the psalmist.

-LDS Guide to the scriptures “ATONE, ATONEMENT”:

See also Blood; Children of Christ; Cross; Crucifixion; Fall of Adam and Eve; Forgive; Gethsemane; Grace; Immortal, Immortality; Jesus Christ; Justification, Justify; Merciful, Mercy; Plan of Redemption; Redeem, Redeemed, Redemption; Remission of Sins; Repent, Repentance; Resurrection; Sacrament; Sacrifice; Salvation; Sanctification; Sons and Daughters of God

To reconcile man to God.

As used in the scriptures, to atone is to suffer the penalty for an act of sin, thereby removing the effects of sin from the repentant sinner and allowing him to be reconciled to God. Jesus Christ was the only one capable of making a perfect atonement for all mankind. He was able to do so because of his selection and foreordination in the Grand Council before the world was formed (Ether 3:14; Moses 4:1–2; Abr. 3:27), his divine Sonship, and his sinless life. His atonement included his suffering for the sins of mankind in the Garden of Gethsemane, the shedding of his blood, and his death and subsequent resurrection from the grave (Isa. 53:3–12; Mosiah 3:5–11; Alma 7:10–13). Because of the Atonement, all people will rise from the dead with immortal bodies (1 Cor. 15:22). The Atonement also provides the way for us to be forgiven of our sins and live forever with God. But a person who has reached the age of accountability and received the law can receive these blessings only if he has faith in Jesus Christ, repents of his sins, receives the ordinances of salvation, and obeys the commandments of God. Those who do not reach the age of accountability and those without the law are redeemed through the Atonement (Mosiah 15:24–25; Moro. 8:22). The scriptures clearly teach that if Christ had not atoned for our sins, no law, ordinance, or sacrifice would satisfy the demands of justice, and man could never regain God’s presence (2 Ne. 2; 9). This is my blood, shed for many for the remission of sins: Matt. 26:28; His sweat was as it were great drops of blood: Luke 22:39–44; I will give my flesh for the life of the world: John 6:51; I am the resurrection, and the life: John 11:25; Christ is the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey: Heb. 5:9; We are sanctified by the shedding of the blood of Christ: Heb. 9; Heb. 10:1–10; Christ also hath once suffered for sins: 1 Pet. 3:18; The blood of Jesus Christ cleanses us from all sin: 1 Jn. 1:7; He was lifted up upon the cross and slain for sins: 1 Ne. 11:32–33; Redemption comes to those who have a broken heart and contrite spirit: 2 Ne. 2:3–10, 25–27;

He offered himself a sacrifice for sin: 2 Ne. 2:7;  
 The Atonement ransoms men from the Fall and saves them from death and hell: 2 Ne. 9:5–24;  
 It must needs be an infinite atonement: 2 Ne. 9:7;  
 Be reconciled unto God through the Atonement of Christ: Jacob 4:11;  
 His blood atones for the sins of those who have ignorantly sinned: Mosiah 3:11–18;  
 Man received salvation through the Atonement: Mosiah 4:6–8;  
 Were it not for the Atonement, they must unavoidably perish: Mosiah 13:27–32;  
 He shall atone for the sins of the world: Alma 34:8–16;  
 God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy: Alma 42:11–30;  
 I am the God of the whole earth, slain for the sins of the world: 3 Ne. 11:14;  
 I, God, have suffered these things for all: D&C 19:16;  
 Little children are redeemed through mine Only Begotten: D&C 29:46–47;  
 Behold the sufferings and death of him who did no sin: D&C 45:3–5;  
 This thing is a similitude of the sacrifice of the Only Begotten: Moses 5:7;  
 Through the Atonement of Christ, all mankind may be saved: A of F 1:3;  
 (See Guide to The Scriptures: Atone, Atonement <https://www.lds.org/scriptures/gs/atone-atonement?lang=eng>)

## Oneness of God, Fall of Adam, & Atonement of Christ

(Some of these things are from Robert Millet's book/lectures Doctrines of the Book of Mormon, they are all based on scripture and modern prophets. More about Millet: he is professor of ancient scripture and emeritus Dean of Religious Education at Brigham Young University (BYU) in Provo, Utah. Millet is a Latter-day Saint author and speaker with more than 60 published works on virtually all aspects of Mormonism. Millet co-founded the evangelical-Mormon dialogue.)

- Christ inherited the power of his father; this we can inherit if we are faithful in Christ
- Christ speaks in the first person as though he were the father at times, we call it divine investiture. For example on section of the D&C has Christ speaking where he says by the power of his only begotten son he redeemed the world. He is speaking a message from his father.
- consider that we get a new tongue, the tongue of angels when we live the gospel. Recall that angels speak the words of Christ.
- at one General Conference Elder Bruce R McConkie said that he felt impressed that if Christ were at their meeting he would have said the very same words that the prophet had spoken at that conference.
- in the book of Moses when Moses speaks with God, prophets have clarified that he is speaking with Jesus Christ, and that occasion Christ is speaking with divine investiture, speaking in the first person as the Father, having authority of the Father to speak in his name.
- why divine investiture used at times? To show the total oneness of the Father and the Son. They are separate people, but they work together as one God. They are on the same mission. Christ inherited from the Father all the powers and attributes of the Father, and can go and represent Him at times.
- Christ created us hence he is called the Father. Christ is the Son of the most high God; hence he is called the Son of God. Hence, we see as in Mosiah 15, Christ is both the Father and the Son. He has these two titles. But he is a separate person from God the Father Elohim.
- Jesus Christ is Jehovah, the God of the Old testament, and Elohim is his father, who appears to introduce him at times.
- since the Fall of Adam rarely does God the Father Elohim come to speak directly with mankind. When he does it's only to introduce his son Jesus Christ and to tell people to hear him.
- James E Talmage in his book Jesus The Christ speaks of many prophets having Elohim and Jehovah appear to them, like happened with Joseph Smith and his first vision in the sacred grove, two persons descend and speak with him, the Father points to the other and says "this is my beloved Son, hear him!"
- The wonder of the gospel of Jesus Christ is that we can become one with God the Father and Jesus Christ just like they are one with each other.
- the Old Testament had this doctrine of the Godhead, these three persons who work together as God. In the Book of Mormon the prophet Zenos and Zenoch testified that they are to worship the Father in the name of the Son. We have record of this in the Book of Mormon, though we don't have those texts in our current Old Testament. In the Book of Mormon it says the record with those prophets' writings, the brass plates which have a more complete Old Testament record in them, will go to all people. Hence we reason that they are yet to come forth to show the Jews and everyone else that Jesus Christ is Jehovah, and is the Son of Elohim, and these work together as being the God of creation.
- It will become even clearer to people the roles of the members of the Godhead in our salvation, and how indeed, God Himself, even Jehovah came down from his exalted throne, and walked among us. Hence Jesus said to the Pharisees, "before Abraham was, I am".
- the Atonement of Christ, his great sacrifice in the Garden of Gethsemane and on Calvary, John Taylor said that it was so painful that it filled the Universe. We can't comprehend how he was able to do it. He is God. No man could have done it.

-Elder Neil A. Maxwell calls the Atonement of Jesus Christ “intergalactic”.

-Book of Mormon points out that Jesus Christ is not a man, he is a God. It prophesies that despite all he will do among men, they will still consider him a man, and reject him. That is the point- they think he is a man not God.

-when the Book of Mormon says salvation is free, it's to say that salvation is available. Like when we say, “The bathroom is free.” It's to say, “the bathroom is available”. You still have to pay the utilities bill to use your bathroom, but it is available should you choose to desire it.

-we must be born again into the kingdom of God

The Fall:

-no one likes to take medication who doesn't understand that they are sick. The Fall of Adam causes us to need the Atonement of Christ. Without the Fall of Adam there would be no need for the Atonement of Christ.

-the Fall was a positive thing, one prophet called it downward but foreword.

-the garden of Eden was like Disneyland, and Adam and Eve had a mission to do of raising children which they couldn't accomplish in there. They had to choose for themselves to subject themselves to the difficulties of the circumstances in which they could have children in the telestial world. It was up to them, God didn't force it on them. God put them in a pleasant state, and they had to make the choice on their own account to

-one prophet, Joseph Fielding Smith if I'm not mistaken, has suggested we read of the Garden of Eden this way, of the trees of the garden thou mayest freely (without consequence) eat. But of the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil thou shalt not (freely, without consequence) eat.

-hence it was not such a situation of conflicting commandments from God, it was a situation where God had a mission for mankind, and said in essence said to them, you can do this if you want. It's going to be hard so I'm going to let you choose for yourselves if you are going to do it. If you choose to do it, you must leave the Garden of Eden and eventually experience death, that is part of the plan.

-the fall was not sexual relations between Adam and Eve, prophets have made that clear.

-people are not accountable until they reach the age of accountability, 8 years old.

-in the Book of Mormon it speaks of how our natures are fallen because of the Fall of Adam- that our natures have become evil continually, see Ether.

-Book of Mormon says that children are saved in Christ. Can a child do bad? Well some children at age 7 have murdered their brother, etc. But while this would be considered sin to other people, to the child of age 7 it is not considered sin, for Christ atones for it. He covers all of the children, and doesn't hold them accountable.

-while we don't believe in original sin (having sins at birth), we believe the seeds of such are in us, and that when we grow up we will sin. Everyone sins except for Jesus Christ the God.

-Jesus Christ covers children until the age of accountability, at that point they are capable to choose for themselves whether they will be good or evil.

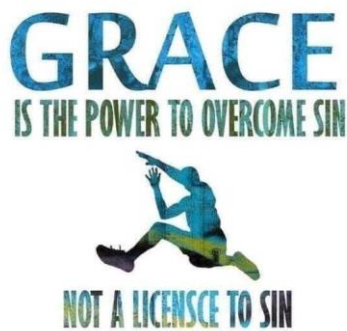
-D&C says that if parents don't teach children the gospel of Jesus Christ by age 8, the sin is upon the heads of the parents.

-often in the Book of Mormon it says that we are “lost” because of the Fall of Adam. Lost implies that we don't know where we are, that we have no family. Then we come to Christ and we are adopted back into the royal family, we take upon us the name of Christ. That is the name of this family. It's like when the prodigal son returns, a ring is put on his finger showing that he is part of the family, a son of the father, an heir of all the father has.

-there is “the fall of mankind”, Jesus Christ has taken care of that with the Atonement, and then there is “the fall of me”, and I need to take care of that by repentance and baptism and righteous living, the things that Jesus Christ has instructed that we must to merit his mercy.

-Thus we see that we sinful because of our parents, but we are responsible for our own sin, see Article of Faith 2.

## Grace



(Image source unknown)

-there is an exit as well as an entrance to hell and once the people have learned what they need there they will leave and there will be rejoicing welcoming him into a better state. —James E. Talmage, CR, April 1930, 97

(granted serious consequences exist for ignoring God in this life, like dropping down a kingdom. You won't remain in hell, but you'll



miss out on the highest heaven. You can't postpone repentance and qualify for the greatest eternal rewards. For more on that see the discourse "The 7 Deadly Heresies" by Elder Bruce R McConkie. We rejoice in the knowledge that hell is a temporary abode, like a prison sentence, this is a glorious truth of the latter-days! We also caution that the sons of perdition will remain forever in hell, however few of them there are; we also caution that qualifying for a middle kingdom instead of the highest, though it will be better than the lowest, knowing what you could have had but do not have will be a hell in and of itself. Lastly and foremost, rejoice at the grace of Christ, the great helper and giver of gifts! The righteous judge!)

-Those assigned to the Telestial Kingdom can't progress to the Celestial Kingdom (D&C 76:112)(McConkie "7 Deadly Heresies")  
-sin appears easy, Lucifer is handsome persuasive, easy friendly, getting us trapped inch by inch, drop by drop. April 1967 p66 CR President Kimball

-A man is his own condemner and tormenter, hence the saying they will go into a lake of fire and brimstone. Disappointment of the mind is as exquisite as a lake burning with fire. TPJS, 357

—"Only the obedient are raised in immortality unto eternal life." (Mormon Doctrine, p. 234.)

-Mercy is not getting in trouble for something we deserve, grace is getting help with something we can't do. -Robert L Millet

-there is an exit as well as an entrance to hell and once the people have learned what they need there they will leave and there will be rejoicing welcoming him into a better state. -James E. Talmage, CR, April 1930, 97

-Repenting doesn't deliver us from all suffering; sin brings pain. That is that. But if we repent, we won't have to suffer the full extent of the consequence of that sin ("Sin and Suffering," BYU 1989-1990 Devotional and Fireside Speeches, 149.)

## Why We Need a Savior: God's Plan vs. Lucifer's Tyranny by Elder D. Todd Christofferson

Excerpts from BYU Devotional on Dec. 12, 2017 titled "A Message at Christmas".

I have found this to be one of the most excellent lectures on the plan of salvation.

-For the official summary of the lecture by BYU (supposedly going to be updated in the near future to the full text of the speech), and the full audio and video recordings, use this URL: [https://speeches.byu.edu/talks/d-todd-christofferson\\_a-message-at-christmas/](https://speeches.byu.edu/talks/d-todd-christofferson_a-message-at-christmas/)

This is a brilliant lecture including points such as God being the representative of justice, Lucifer's desire to be a law unto himself (and what that means), mercy defined as justice fulfilled by a third party, the absolute requirement of repentance for salvation.

There has not been a full text released on this yet, here are my notes:

-Why can't God just save us, he loves us can't he do anything he wants? Why do we need a Savior? This is an ancient philosophy, Nehor taught that in the end all will be saved, don't worry about it, God loves everyone so much that everyone will be saved.

However, God is God because he is just.

-If there were no laws with punishments and rewards, our choices would be useless.

We need to know that if we do 1 thing, we get 1 outcome, if another, another.

-Well what of the good person? Obstacle death, and even the best don't meet all just expectations, and no unclean thing can dwell with God.

-Lucifer didn't just want slight alteration to the plan, he didn't want to be the Savior, he wanted to delete the Savior role from the plan; he wanted to be a law unto himself rather than helping justice and mercy occur. He would change the rules at his will, and nothing would be predictable, things would be changing based on his whims, our choices would become vain without repercussions. He wanted the power and glory without putting in the work.

From the BYU summary (not the full text), here is the part about the need of a Savior:

"Then Elder Christofferson shared an experience he had when a long-time member of the church asked him why she needed a Savior if she was a good person. Elder Christofferson admitted he was shocked at her lack of understanding, but he explained that we all need resurrection and redemption. He acknowledged that, asked another way, the woman could have been asking something like, 'If God is all-powerful and all-loving, why can't He just save us all Himself. Why did God need a Savior for us?' Elder Christofferson identified this way of thinking as similar to Nehor the antichrist's teachings, and the proposition of the devil in the premortal life. If everyone was saved regardless of actions, then there would be no personal growth and no choices. '[The Father's plan] requires accountability for choices made—otherwise they aren't really choices. Choice, in turn, requires law, or predictable outcomes,' Elder Christofferson said. 'We must be able by a particular action or choice to cause a particular outcome or result and by the opposite choice create the opposite outcome. If actions don't have fixed consequences, then one has no control over outcomes and choice is meaningless.' Elder Christofferson taught that eternal laws are what make choices and consequences possible. God is a just God and governs according to law. We, His children, are not capable of keeping all the laws and enduring the consequences for incorrect choices. So God created mercy and a Savior, Jesus Christ, to fulfill the requirement of law and to extend mercy to all of us. 'So the answer to our question is

no, God cannot act any way He pleases to save a person. He must do it in a way that upholds immutable law, and thanks be to God, he has done so by providing a Savior,” Elder Christofferson said.”

## Christ Symbols in Animal Sacrifice of the Law of Moses

I understand that many, including myself, are hurt when animals are killed. I want to offer some explanations for why this took place in The Law of Moses. If you're interested in more info on a plant based diet, particularly a perspective of church leaders and other great scientists who all discourage the use of meat etc., see “Discovering the Word of Wisdom” by Jane Birch. Here we will look at animal sacrifice and the law of Moses.

-There is no animal which God will not raise from the dead! God will raise all animals from the dead! If he wants to take the life of an animal, a lesser intelligence, to illustrate a critical teaching to the higher intelligences which they could not get any other way, the understanding of Jesus Christ, then it is his power to do so. He created all creatures. Death is come upon all of them. Life, also, is come upon all of them. In the resurrection, even they shall rise. An animal is going to die whether by getting eaten, or starvation, or the pains of old age. If God wants to slay it on an altar, it's just as well. God not only created the animals, but he created you also. So don't complain about how he chooses to do things. We are little children trying to understand the workings of a parent. Eventually all doubt as to why God chose to do things this way will be removed from us, and all the facts will be before us, and we will wonder why we were ever so skeptical of our loving Father in Heaven.

(references showing animals to be resurrected, see Prophecy key to the future by Crowther, and the Book of Mormon states it plainly)

-Another idea is that learning about God's sacrifice for mankind via the animal sacrifice symbols was hard to lose those animals, but it's even worse to lose a human soul, which would occur if people forgot about God's role in their salvation. It's so critical that people understand, that we are doing something dramatic, killing an animal, to try and get them to understand. There are higher and lower life forms. The highest life forms are human beings. It is worse to lose the soul of a person than the life of an animal.

-An idea Dr. Jordan Peterson gives is that killing an animal was showing that you were serious about keeping your commitment. Sacrifice always accompanies devotion/dedication. Today we have few to no symbols for showing serious commitment.

-The following is an excerpt from a brilliant address on this subject, the why of ancient biblical animal sacrifice, from Elder Holland in an address titled “Behold the Lamb of God” (2019, April General Conference). The full text is available in text video and audio: <https://www.lds.org/general-conference/2019/04/28holland?lang=eng>

“Looking up from water's edge, past the eager crowds seeking baptism at his hand, John, called the Baptist, saw in the distance his cousin, Jesus of Nazareth, striding resolutely toward him to make a request for that same ordinance. Reverently, but audible enough for those nearby to hear, John uttered the admiration that still moves us two millennia later: “Behold the Lamb of God.”<sup>1</sup>

It is instructive that this long-prophesied forerunner to Jesus did not call Him “Jehovah” or “Savior” or “Redeemer” or even “the Son of God”—all of which were applicable titles. No, John chose the earliest and perhaps most commonly recognized image in the religious tradition of his people. He used the figure of a sacrificial lamb offered in atonement for the sins and sorrows of a fallen world and all the fallen people in it.

Please indulge me in recalling just a little of that history.

After expulsion from the Garden of Eden, Adam and Eve faced a devastating future. Having opened the door to mortality and temporal life for us, they had closed the door to immortality and eternal life for themselves. Due to a transgression they had consciously chosen to make in our behalf, they now faced physical death and spiritual banishment, separation from the presence of God forever.<sup>2</sup> What were they to do? Would there be a way out of this plight? We are not certain just how much these two were allowed to remember of the instruction they received while still in the garden, but they did remember they were to regularly offer for a sacrifice unto God a pure, unblemished lamb, the first male born of their flock.<sup>3</sup>

Later an angel came to explain that this sacrifice was a type, a prefiguration of the offering that would be made in their behalf by the Savior of the world who was to come. “This thing is a similitude of the sacrifice of the Only Begotten of the Father,” the angel said. “Wherefore, . . . thou shalt repent and call upon God in the name of the Son forevermore.”<sup>4</sup> Fortunately, there was going to be a way out and a way up.

In the premortal councils of heaven, God had promised Adam and Eve (and all the rest of us) that help would come from His pure, unblemished Firstborn Son, the Lamb of God “slain from the foundation of the world,”<sup>5</sup> as the Apostle John would later describe Him. By offering their own little symbolic lambs in mortality, Adam and his posterity were expressing their understanding of and their dependence upon the atoning sacrifice of Jesus the Anointed One.<sup>6</sup> Later, the wilderness tabernacle would become the setting for this ordinance and, after that, the temple that Solomon would build.

Unfortunately, as a symbol of genuine repentance and faithful living, this ritualistic offering of unblemished little lambs didn't work very well, as so much of the Old Testament reveals. The moral resolve that should have accompanied those sacrifices sometimes didn't last long enough for the blood to dry upon the stones. In any case, it didn't last long enough to preclude fratricide, with Cain killing his brother Abel in the first generation.<sup>7</sup>

With such trials and troubles going on for centuries, no wonder the angels of heaven sang for joy when, finally, Jesus was born—the long-promised Messiah Himself. Following His brief mortal ministry, this purest of all Passover sheep prepared His disciples for His

death by introducing the sacrament of the Lord's Supper, a more personal form of the ordinance that had been introduced just outside of Eden. There would still be an offering, it would still involve a sacrifice, but it would be with symbolism much deeper, much more introspective and personal than the bloodletting of a firstborn lamb. To the Nephites, after His Resurrection, the Savior said of this: "Ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood. ...

"... Ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost. ...

"... Therefore repent, ... and be saved."<sup>8</sup>

My beloved brothers and sisters, with the exciting new emphasis on increased gospel learning in the home, it is crucial for us to remember that we are still commanded to "go to the house of prayer and offer up thy sacraments upon my holy day."<sup>9</sup> In addition to making time for more home-centered gospel instruction, our modified Sunday service is also to reduce the complexity of the meeting schedule in a way that properly emphasizes the sacrament of the Lord's Supper as the sacred, acknowledged focal point of our weekly worship experience. We are to remember in as personal a way as possible that Christ died from a heart broken by shouldering entirely alone the sins and sorrows of the whole human family.

Inasmuch as we contributed to that fatal burden, such a moment demands our respect."

#### Faith Precedes the Miracle by Spencer W. Kimball – Book Notes

Video presentation of this document, [click here](#).

-5 steps repentance may fall under:

1. conviction of and sorrow for sin
2. abandonment of sin
3. confession of sin
4. restitution for sin
5. doing the will of the Lord

-we must be willing to be excommunicated in the repentance process for serious sin.

-what's a home without a mother? Each time a child enters home often they call for mother merely to know she is there, then they go about playing. When a mother died in a home, it was sad. Another woman was married, and the child could again call out upon returning home, "mother!?" "I am here son." Would come the reply, and again the joy and safety the child felt, and it went to play. Youth of all ages seek this recognition that mother is home.

-“a child needs it's mother more than anything money can buy.”

-most women over 35 are in work force not for needs but to have higher life style and escape house chores or to seek some more interesting life. Many problems come from such homes, and spouses blame each other for their problems.

-People in the Church have always been admonished to marry in the house of the Lord.

-The emotional climate prevailing between the parents is the most important factor in child development.

-Absent parents is often linked to misbehaved adolescents and immorality.

-Real athletes or people with real hobbies don't give scandalous bars and night clubs or other crazy parties their business like others do.

-The idol mind is the Devil's workshop.

-Quotes King Follett sermon of Joseph Smith saying God was once as we are, and looks like us.

-Like Jesus, we go all places to declare repentance.

-At Jesus' 1st visit home they cast him out.

-We are like Nicodemus often, good at rules, bad at the gospel. It's not so hard to understand being born again. Nicodemus makes it seem like it's a hard thing to understand but it's not. It was very plain to him, but his unwillingness to repent of his sins blocked him from making progress. We must give up everything for the righteousness we're called for.

-Jesus' 2nd Coming promise will literally come to pass just like all his other promises. In the meantime, serve God.

-(in this church) we know Jesus is waiting to return.

-In our day the whole eternal program is here and can carry people to eternal life and Godhood.

-If there is astrigent it is because men have cut themselves off from God.

-Whether we really know God the Father and The Son is what determines whether we flounder in indecision or go with confidence.

-There are 3 Gods (the Godhead)

-The Father and The Son have identified themselves throughout all history.

-The Holy Priesthood protects us as we are in the presence of God like a suit against a fire or a water suit to protect from unbearable cold etc.

-Not even Lucifer, the worst of foes, can withstand the Priesthood. See book of Moses. He saw Jehovah which was exhausting, and he needed protection to be able to see him, but he could see Lucifer easily with his natural eyes.

-God The Father in special cases reveals himself like on the Mt. of Transfiguration and to Joseph Smith.

-Woodruff said all signers of the Declaration of Independence are righteous.

-President Young said if the dead could speak they would loud as possible tell leaders of the Church to build temples and redeem their dead and magnify their callings.

-B.Y. said some here are adulterers and we can't go on with these ordinances until they leave. None left. He asked again. Nothing. Then threatened to call them out by name if they didn't leave. Then 2 people got up and left.

-Scientists show now intelligent life on other planets and suggest they can send info to other planets.

-We honor and congratulate scientists for some of what they do. It is clearer as viewed with LDS knowledge of the Plan of Salvation.

-Adam Enoch Moses Abraham had much information of earth, astronomy, and universe order.

-Scriptures say some worlds self destroy, others go on to perfection.

-Heavenly Father from his wise old world has tried to warn us against our self destruction.

-Some scientists say perhaps a wiser older civilization who has outlived trials we now face will reach out to us. But that is what we have with Heavenly Father from the beginning!

-Light emanates from God whom is at the center of the universe.

-There are millions of units in God's universe.

-There is extra-terrestrial communication? Yes, back and forth with us and God.

-Radio between this and other planets? Yes, it has been going on all along, via the prophets, visions, dreams, etc., and they continue to come to the living prophets among us.

-Ancient Babylon had at least 700 deities.

- The day of hunger for God's word is our day. No wonder spirits are faint. Professors are leaving students more lost.
- Science is finding unanswerable questions.
- Modern men seem reluctant to receive council from them of old.
- The Apostasy came not from persecution but from people's belief stopping and combining peccan things with Christian things. People did colorful ceremonies for the ordinances, elaborate and manmade, so they attract people. Such is not Christianity.
- Christ chose his Apostles for their humility, responsiveness, childlike obedience.
- Saying no one can know God because I don't know God is like saying other people's pain is false since I have no pain, or that no one can climb a mountain because I haven't done it.
- Kimball works to exhaustion often and recovers quickly. He calls on extra strength from God very often.
- He put on overalls to help milk the cows of the people who his host.
- 85 days before the conference in which he was announced that he was an Apostle, he prayed before dawn daily those 85 days for a blessing from God like Jacob wrestling with God for his blessing.
- He always tried to do what his dad asked of him.
- Free time to self for youth is not normal or healthy.
- Kids without work get in trouble. Parents of such are over protective and over indulgent.
- Can't find a job? Bad excuse, you can. Before and after school, and on weekends and vacation days. (Tons of ideas presented in the text)
- No one owes youth entertainment etc.
- Develop a backbone not a wishbone.
- President McKay says this age of gadgetry threatens weak body and character.
- More jails and psychologists and money for such isn't the answer, the fundamentals of family are the answer. The way is prevention.



- With good families, there would be few if any prodigals.
- Mothers come home and be real mothers, and fathers provide, and there'll be less delinquents.
- Happiness comes without per suing it if you go and do what you should.
- Happiness does not depend on money. Often the rich are the most unhappy.
- You can ride the bus and still be happy.
- You must forget yourself and love your companion more than yourself and you'll be happy.
- You can wear clothes for more than one season and still be happy.
- Weddings, like birth, baptism, ordinances, are to be small and quiet.
- We don't commercialize on marriages.
- Young men just married can't give woman what her parents were giving her by way of temporal things.
- It was never meant by The Lord that women should compete with men in employment. Women have a much greater work to do as homemaker wife and mother.
- Women need study child psychology and child discipline and how to teach buying on a budget. Make your own clothes. Pick up bargains.
- Women should learn practical nursing it can save much money and be part of how newlyweds can survive financially having children during college.
- Women are expected to earn the living only in emergencies.
- Women stay at home making it attractive and pleasant, and when husband comes home have it clean and with dinner. He will be tired, you'll be full of energy and life and home will be wonderful.
- Don't live with parents when you are married. Many divorces come from parents interfering with marriages of their children. It's better to live in a tent than to live in your parents' home once married.
- Men don't take 2-3 jobs to give luxury to your wife. That may come later.
- Men don't work away from home to make more money. You're being married so you can always be together.

- Marriage based only on physical attraction ends soon. People cycle in this, marriage, divorce, time and again.
- We don't need more psychologists and funds for jails, but more family values.
- We came to earth full well knowing what our responsibilities would be here.
- Do not postpone childbearing, this is what the Lord intended.
- Don't limit the size of your family.
- Flirting as married in any level is serious sin.
- It's gross disloyalty to speak of your difficulties which you have with your spouse to your parents.
- Forgive each other and ask forgiveness of each other and at night it all is forgotten.
- Many marital issues are from communication issues.
- Sooner or later sin comes when communication is down.
- Perhaps never before has sin been so publicly accepted. No, not since the beginning of this earth.
- Satan's threat to take all who will follow him is no idol boast. He seeks people of all ages.
- All media seems to glamorize immorality. Nothing, not even marital vows, is sacred to the world.
- have No desire for anyone but your spouse.
- too busy for Family Home Evening and family prayer then your marriage will fail.
- all loyalty honor and respect and affection to spouse, eye single to such.
- Home-breaking is sin. Any thought or action to break a home is sin.
- No single person should comfort a married man.
- Must wait until the divorce is final before courting in any way with someone.
- To want or yearn for extramarital romance is coveting what belongs to another and is sin.

- Like octopus tentacles, transgression begins seemingly innocent but then takes powerful grasp of you.
- Spouses must share the blame for broken homes.
- Women immodesty, flattering looks, and extreme makeup tempts men and is sin.
- When married, cut self loose from apron strings of parents.
- Parents don't draw your child away from their spouse.
- Infidelity is often the cause of love dying.
- Paul says no jesting no even joking about marriage infidelity. Marriage is sacred.
- Don't become too familiar with people who aren't your spouse.
- Keep marriage fresh.
- Express thanks and affection often to your spouse.
- Come home with all loyalties and affections toward your spouse.
- Shockingly even LDS youth justify premarital sex as being ok. No, it's abominable heresy.
- Sex is not the standard of living. It's not about being sexually compatible to qualify for marriage with someone.
- Satan opens doors 1 inch at a time. He leads people from whitest white to all shades of grey to blackest black.
- Leaders must make the true way clear and cry repentance ever on these things (about sexual morality) in order to be blameless.
- Premarital sex is not real love, it's only lust. It's the most serious sin short of murder.
- Extramarital sex is biological materialism.
- With extramarital sex, true love goes out 1 door, and lust comes in the other. It'll never build great people or kingdoms.
- This world is in great danger. When we tolerate sin, Sodom and Gomorrah fates are certain to come.
- It's terrifying that people say, "Let people live their own lives why should we judge the way they live?"

- We love people by serving them. We use things like doormats. Don't merely use people like things. Rather, love them.
- Like an overbearing salesman whose product can't deliver as he promises, so is extramarital sex.
- Marriage gives life, fornication brings death.
- If you still like someone with illness and distorted body, then it's love.
- Immodesty leads to in chastity.
- Don't speak about sex like it's a common thing.
- Don't use clothes which emphasize body parts and sex.
- Beauty Queen contests are like Greek polytheism. They don't do any good for the lady, it's only for popularity. Character has nothing to do with it. Bathing suits being worn in these contests is a vulgar way to get attention. Bodies are sacred and should be thus treated. The lure of prizes and the glory of winning makes these girls want to be in these contests.
- Immodesty baton girls at ball games are wrong. We must be different when there is right and wrong.
- Scholarly work taking pictures of nude women is happening and is deplorable the things we excuse in the name of scholarliness.
- No low cut gowns.
- No bare back.
- Women most beautiful when fully clothed and with hair.
- Corrupt men are attracted to immodest women.
- More and more women are inviting sex crimes. This is because they're being taught to be teasers and immodest by their parents' media and others.
- Immodesty is daring sexual willingness.
- Forgiveness for sexual sin is available but is very hard to get. The way of the transgressor is always hard.
- Every sin is against ourselves and against God. They estrange us from good people, progress, and God.

- Conscience warns us when we are entering forbidden worlds until we ignore and repeat.
- It's untrue to say, "I'm born this way God can't condemn me for this sin." We aren't limited as beasts.
- To blame sins on our parents and upbringing is the way of the escapist. We are children of God and can master ourselves. (\*Like Abraham who was good despite having a bad father)
- Necking and petting are condemned by the Savior. This is because these are "like unto" adultery. Jesus said no lost or anything like unto it.
- Fornication is extramarital sex.
- Abortion is great sin people do who are too coward to face consequences of what they've done.
- Bandage should match the size of the wound; if offend many, rebuke before many. If few, then few. If public scandal must let public know of the forgiveness.
- If a private sin with self confession, excommunication is less likely.
- Much misery and gross feelings come to those who do premarital sex, even if they think a lot of each other and have been dating a long time.
- For grave errors like sexual sins one should go to the bishop to confess.
- Virginity is impossible to give back hence this theft is so serious.
- Preaching is like putting into a bank over drafted account, a deposit toward our sin debt.
- Blanketing others with protection is like blanket covering your sins.
- Fortify yourselves against further sin.
- We must suffer a sufficient amount for our sins.
- Many in this church are amazingly close to perfection.
- Don't go to court over trivial matters.
- To the gossipers: thou shalt not bear false witness.

-To who find issue with church leaders and hence go not to church or pay tithes: cursed are they and no Priesthood for them.

-For the intolerant: call not unholy what the Lord has made holy.

-Proof of repentance is doing the commandments.

-Who forgive not each other will be afflicted.

– In the parable of the unjust judge, the one man was forgiven, based on currency translations, an amount 600,000 times more than the amount that the same servant would not forgive others. AKA the man was forgiven 600,000 units, but he wouldn't forgive 1 unit That is the ratio, 600,000 times as much.

-Sing often these hymns: 1. Should you feel inclined to censure 2. school thy thoughts my brother

3. Let each man learn to know and love himself.

-Stephen, Joseph Smith, and Jesus Christ all forgave who slew them without their asking it or repenting.

-The law of forgiving: we must not let the grievance continue to embitter us.

-Pray our own debts before we press those who owe us.

-In prayer raise your voice to the heavens.

-It's shocking how many don't pray regularly morning and night personally and with their family.

-of 35 seminary students, 2 had family prayer that morning. Such is a commandment!

-Family prayer need be kneeling morning and night!!!

-Ask for needed blessings for each occasion with that prayer.

-The Lord's prayer as a sample is only about 30 seconds long but at times obviously we should pray longer.

-Thank anyone who blesses us especially God.

-Pray for political rulers to have God's influence.

-If ye solute your brethren only, what do ye more than others?



-Saying we can't afford to pay our tithing to the Church is like saying we can't afford integrity. What? Absurd! Who ever heard of such a thing!

-Treasures of wisdom and knowledge promised for obedience to The Word of Wisdom (the health code in the church) go beyond temporal things. It deals also, and mainly, with peace in life, a sure knowledge of your Redeemer, utter confidence in Him, deep spiritual stability.

-The hidden treasures of knowledge temporal and spiritual are only hidden to those who don't seek. It's available to all who really search. God said seek and ye shall find.

-Joseph Smith said in scripture when it says God and Christ will come and make abode with you, dwell with him who loves God via obeying him, such is literally their appearance of the two, not just dwelling in your heart, and said this is a highest blessing.

-Each person on this planet can receive the EXALTING knowledge of the gospel regardless of race etc.

-"A man cannot be saved in ignorance" (see D&C) means you need the ordinances and covenants pertaining to the gospel, and be true and faithful to the end in those. It's not just about secular knowledge. More so these than those.

-Knowledge is more about creatively using the facts that you have not just collecting facts.

-Secular knowledge is a desire; spiritual knowledge is a necessity; we will need secular knowledge to be able to create worlds etc., but we need spiritual knowledge to be able to get to the stage where we can do that stuff. We must obey God.

-He knew a man who had many possessions, a humongous ranch, he wouldn't pay his tithing for the money always went into the ranch, and he would not serve in the church for he was always taking care of his ranch. He was intelligent and resourceful, but he lived a shallow life, it's like when Jesus talked the parable about the man who said soul thou hast much good laid up these many years take thine ease. This man broke down his barn and built a larger one to be able to hold his goods. God says to him, thou fool this night shall thy soul be required of thee, then whose shall those things be which thou hast provided?

-People have great farms great lands but where do they get the water from those etc.? It's all from the Lord. So there is no reason not to pay tithing. It's ridiculous not to pay tithing.

-God never said we have right to the land without limits. Saints seek treasures and they get spiritual riches. The earth is stewardship of ours; if we live all of Gods commands we get the earth, but it's not promise of temporal riches.

-He knows many men who had GREAT possessions, and when they were dead, all they had was a little box about 6 feet long, 2 feet wide, and 2 feet tall, buried 6 feet underground.

-Those who have great farms think it's all their fault; but who put the chemicals to make them grow? Who put the sap in the branches of the tree? Who gave the sunlight? The water? This was all God. God is your partner in work, which is why you need to give him tithing which is what he asks. It's ridiculous not to pay tithing.

-When we prosper in life, the talents that we use, our memory, our brain, our breathing, our skills, these things are all from God, so you must pay tithing!

-A professor wouldn't pay tithing. He said he earns his keep, and merely uses his brains. Kimball said where did you get your brains? Did you make your brains? Did you buy them in a store? Did you put the chemicals together to make your brain? No. You rely on God. You need to pay your tithing.

-Remember the Lord in your wealth; that it is by the Lord that you are able to get wealth, so pay your tithing

-Jesus said give to Caesar what belongs to Caesar, and to God what's God's. Caesar always gets what belongs to Caesar, but does God always get what belongs to God?

-It's ridiculous to not pay tithing: can't afford to give back to the great provider a little portion of what He has given you?

-Does God make promises he can't keep? If you believe in God, why aren't you paying your tithing? He said that if you pay it then you'll get tons of blessings, windows of heaven poured out. So if you believe in God and aren't paying your tithing, you are really just trusting in yourself and not God.

-Paying tithing is like a child who makes its bed or washes the car. It's not being generous, it's a minor thing compared to everything the kid gets.

-Do you rob banks? Would you take your neighbors tire? Would you rob a widow's insurance money with no intent of paying her back? These questions seem big, but they are the same as not paying tithing.

-Would you take from your neighbors' money to send your children to college or on a mission? This is what it's like to not pay tithing. Would you provide gifts for the poor with someone else's money? That's the Lord's money, it's not yours. The Lord continues to ask, will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. And he has said that today is a day of sacrifice and the tithing of my people.

-All who believe the bible should be paying tithing regardless to what creed they are for this is what the bible says.

-Usually when people write him anonymous letters he throws them away because they don't have the courage to say who they are.

-The people who reject minorities like different races, they're like the Levite and Priest who pass by the suffering person in the parable of the good Samaritan. The Church is worldwide now. It doesn't matter that the first 100 years were mostly white members.

-At the time in The Church when blacks could not have the Priesthood, Kimball said the members don't discriminate against them, we don't know why God has placed this limit. Don't put any additional burdens on their backs. This limit is on them for now, but know that when they are baptized, they enter the Church and they have always been baptized into the Church, and they will have all the blessings of EXALTATION that anyone else will have in time.

-If the Lord were to acknowledge a superior people, a superior race whom he favors, would it not be Israel? So don't spurn against any members of the Church (\*Elder Bruce R McConkie teaching a religion class at BYU with Elder Oaks said to the question of how many of the Church are adopted Israel rather than literal descendants of Israel: that you could count them on one hand. It's extremely rare).

Racism is bad especially doubly bad to Israel, the Native American Indians are descendants of Israel. Don't spurn them.

-Throughout history the Lord has favored Israel, those are the people to whom he has personally appeared.

-Prejudice is Satanic.

-Peter said God put no difference between us and them, I perceive that God is no respecter of persons. Every nation that feareth him and worth righteousness is accepted of him. So don't complain when there is people of different races taking leadership positions in the Church.

-Prejudice is a monster: it's judging people before we know them.

-It's not until you are involved with people of other races that you realize where your prejudice level is. When will we end our making game of those different than ourselves? When will we cease not wanting to share with them? We should rather follow the Savior. We take pride in our heritage, but we should remember others have those heroes of heritage too. Like the Book of Mormon Indian heroes.

-The white race isn't better than any other race; races rise and fall throughout time. History shows us this. Civilizations rise all fall.

-Nursing fathers scripture: that is fulfilled. To those Lamanites, it's fulfilled. Gentiles have come to them and been their nursing fathers. They have paid the price for their sins. They are forgiven now.

-You can't make fun of the Lamanites, these Native American Indians etc., until you have been through what their fore bearers have. Yes, until you have spent 14 years on a mission, giving up royalty to do so, kingship and luxury, going through hunger and being beaten to preach. Also feeling the wounds in Jesus' hands. Also keeping peace among themselves for 200 years. We in the USA have never been able to do that we always have war. Yes, have children who praise your name, and mothers who teach their children faith like the stripling warriors. Once you've reached all these attainments then you can spurn these people.

-Kicking against the pricks: this passage is about rebellion against God, it can only hurt you. It's like the man who stubs his toe on a chair, then kicks the chair in anger, resulting in breaking his toe.

-Apostates have this usual pattern: at first, they don't apostatize, but they think they know more than the Apostles and they criticize the Apostles. They say they love the Apostles, but then they speak of it more and more, their pride grows more and more, and it shakes the children's' confidence in the Apostles, and apostasy comes more and more. His children will leave the Church. he will see this and often come back to the Church to try and get his children back, but often in this type of case, he has lost them.

-The people who don't like their bishop and refuse to go to Church so long as that man is bishop: Their children don't go to church or get baptized or get ordained to the Priesthood or go on missions; they grow up apostate and they put a cloud over themselves which their righteous prayers cannot pass through.

-Persecutors of the Christians have only caused the Christians to be more brave and devoted to their cause, like Romans putting them in colosseums or decapitating John and killing the Apostles. So it is with persecution to the Church.

-

-when they killed Joseph Smith it didn't kill the Church rather the bullets in his flesh prepared the soil and the blood on the ground from him moistened the seed for the gospel to grow.

-Sweet peace comes to people when they yield to the gentle pressures of the spirit to be faithful in the kingdom of God. So it was with the brother in law of David Whitmer. He left the Church, fought against it, became of little influence, later returned to the Church, and was able to die happy.

-Strong central governments leads to tyranny.

-Best intentions are often misunderstood.

-When one President of the Church dies, another comes. It's like one star setting and another rising. Death is replaced with life.

-The Prophet is often an old man and wise and sustained from much communication with the Lord. Adam Abraham and Jacob were old prophets and presided over their people in old age. Abraham Isaac and Jacob ruled at age 110 and 120 etc.

-When they were waiting to see who the next Prophet the Apostles would be he (BY?) wrote that we should be patient as a large wheel moves slow.

-A Prophet doesn't need to be everything to all people. He doesn't need to be athletic, businesslike, militarist, linguist, multi-lingual, etc. But he must understand the divine language and be able to receive messages from heaven.

-“A Prophet is not just a minister he is the voice of God to announce new programs etc. He must speak like his Lord as one having authority and not as the scribes. He must be bold enough to speak truth even against popular clamor for lessening restrictions. He must be certain of his celestial commission and divine appointment and commission to call to service, to ordain, to pass things that fit eternal laws, he must have commanding power like prophets of old to seal things both on earth and in heaven; to seal the unbelieving and rebellious unto the wrath of God for the day when the wrath of God shall be poured out upon the wicked without measure and rare are the powers that seal on earth and in heaven that bind on earth and bind on heaven.”

-Prophets need to be more of a Moses than a Pharaoh. More of a Paul than a Pontius Pilot. More of a Prophet than a King. He bridges the gap between the world and it's maker. When the world ignores Prophets, the results are and have been stagnation and death.

-For 1000's of years there have been broadcasts from heaven. “The messages have never ceased.” It's similar to who messages are broadcasted today.

-Often people are not attuned to the broadcast of God they just hear static. But to those in tune, they get the message of God.

-People exploring space trying to get higher and higher into space won't find God that way, God isn't found in physical ways, but spiritual ways. (\*It's like the people who tried building The Tower of Babel to get to heaven, avoid required righteousness/accountability, etc.!)

-The bread of life: feed people this. Light the lamps of the Israelites.

-“All that thou commandest us we will do, and wither thou sendest us we will go.” That is what the Israelites shouted in unison to Moses. Likewise we should say to our prophet, and we should uphold the prophet's hands as they did too.

-In 1809 there were great battles with Napoleon and such, but great babies were born. Several examples of great leaders come via babies. People think that God needs to do battle to get his causes done, but really, he just sends babies. Great souls who will rise up above their surroundings.

-What mother doesn't look at her child as a future leader of the Church or statesman? One mother gives us a Shakespeare, another a George Washington, another an Abraham Lincoln, still another a Joseph Smith.

-When God needs to part the heavens and send a message, he sends a baby.

-“3,500 years before Joseph Smith Jr. and Sr., they were named. They were known of by Joseph sold into Egypt. Little did the parents of Joseph Smith know that they would give birth to a prophet. Joseph Smith would be like Joseph in Egypt: Restore the Kingdom, people will pay obeisance to him, millions will follow him, monuments will be built to him, poets will write of him, many will sing of him, people will write libraries of books about him. No living soul could guess that this little

pinkish infant will become the peer of Moses in spiritual power, and greater than many prophets before him. He will talk with God the Eternal Father and Jesus Christ His Son, and angels will be his guest instructors.”

-It's foolish to try to protect the earth with armaments and battle things and space equipment when all you need is righteousness. The most important event since the meridian of time was the Restoration of the gospel in 1820 to the prophet Joseph Smith.

-“The answer to all our problems has been given many times by ancient and modern prophets. We look to foreign programs, summit conferences, land bases, we have put on for fortifications our gods of stone, upon ships and planes and projectiles, our gods of iron, gods that have no ears no eyes no hearts, we pray to them for deliverance and depend on them for protection. Like the gods of Baal, they could be talking or pursuing or on a journey or peradventure sleeping when they are needed most. And like Elijah, we might cry out to our world, how long halt ye between two opinions? If the Lord be God, follow Him.”

-God has outlined the path but we do not follow it.

-The 200 years of peace recorded in the Book of Mormon are the most years of peace we have ever known of; also beware, God will not be mocked forever, God will pour out his wrath upon us for we are not living as he has taught.

-The President of the Church is not only the Prophet to God's Saints, but to every person in the world.

-The Nephites long ago went northward fleeing just like how the Native American Indians fled to the west persecuted from the east. The past 400 years they have been persecuted so bad. This is all their land.

-The history of the Native American Indians has been dark. Their being persecuted the past 400 years. But it's been said that the most deep dark comes just before the dawn. Now the dawn is coming for them. They would not have had to go through what they have if they did not lose their religion and culture and become degenerate not able to stand up to the Europeans.

-More than 50% of the crops we use are from the Native American Indians. Petroleum, Cascara, Cocaine, jelly, wynine, witch hazel, these have been given to us by the Indian to help cure diseases.

-Of all prophecies, but behold it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles, that prophecy is the most fulfilled perhaps of any scripture it's about the Native American Indians who are the Lamanites getting scattered by the Gentiles.

-They call the white people who killed the Indians heroic man; not so.

-The story ends up in prejudice and not seeing the red man as having a soul.

-We have a debt to pay to the Native American Indians, we are very largely indebted to them.

-White man, the Gentiles, must be the strength that pulls up the Native American Indian. We have wronged them and now it's time to put them up

-During the Mesa Arizona temple dedication President Lee said "the descendants of Lehi are the native American Indians . He asked that from that time forth they would increase in numbers, strength, and influence, that all the great glorious promises made concerning the descendants of Lehi be fulfilled in them, that they may grow in vigor of body and of mind, and above all love for the Father and His Son, increase in faith and diligence and keeping the commandments that will come to them from the gospel of Jesus Christ, and that many of them will have the privilege of entering this holy house and receiving ordinances for themselves and their departed ancestors."

-President Wilford Woodruff said "I am looking for all things to come to pass as the Lord has said and they will: the Lamanites will prosper and flower the land" "the Lamanites getting slain, these Native American Indians, being slain by the government makes it seem like there won't be enough of them left to receive the gospel, but the promise will be fulfilled, they will receive the gospel, and it will be a day of God's power among them, when a nation will be born in a day. Their chiefs will be filled with the power of God and receive the gospel, and they will go forth and build the New Jerusalem and we shall help them. They are the branches of the House of Israel."

-At the time of Columbus coming it was estimated that there were 233,000 Native American Indians here. There used to be millions here. We know that from the Book of Mormon record.

-Today Native American Indians are the most increasing population in the USA. There are probably more now than when they were first chased to the west. This is prophecy being fulfilled.

-There are many 1000's of Lamanites of Lehi's posterity in North and South America. Many thousands of them are in colleges, receiving endowments, leading stakes, acting as counselors.

-1845 message of the 12 Apostles spoke of the children of the Native American Indians on how "they need to be instructed of temperance industry mechanical arts manners customs dress music and all other things which are calculated to refine and purify their nature as glorified sons and daughters of the royal house of Israel and of Joseph for making ready of the coming of the Bridegroom." They said, "we need to give a portion of our time to the training of these people who have slept so long and now are beginning to stretch and yawn and awakened from their sleep and come into their own."

-Elder Packer was on the stand at a church meeting he saw a little dirty Lamanite boy hushed out by the members. He saw the lad come back in and beckoned him to come sit on his lap. As he held the lad he felt it was symbolic of him "holding a nation hungry and suffering wanting something to eat, a hunger which they could not explain, humble people yearning to revive memories faded out; a people of ancestors standing wide eyed, open mouthed expecting and excited; a people searching for truths they seem to remember only vaguely, for prophecies which would someday be fulfilled, (remembering that long ago they had been) looking up and seeing and holding a glorified being descended from celestial areas and hearing a voice saying "Behold, I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and in me hath the Father glorified His name. I am the light and the life of the world."

-“The day of the Lamanite is surely here are we are God’s instrument in helping to bring to pass the prophecies of renewed vitality, acceptance of the gospel and presumption of a favored place as a part of God’s chosen people.”

-“We have it in our power to hasten or delay the prophecies by energetic of delayful fulfillment of our responsibilities.”

-Each time I read the Book of Mormon it engages me all the more. It has vital messages.

-The Book of Mormon has people of all types: the alcoholic with his liquor, the pervert robbing his sex, and the missionary on his knees, and the warrior bathed in blood, all the way to the so near perfect person that angels ministered to him daily. This book carries the reader across continents, promises to tell of the last days and reveals earlier days to do so. Class distinctions there, race prejudice is there, multiplicity of creeds and their conflicts are there, all like we have in our day.

-The Book of Mormon is so wide spread now, so many copies in distribution. Can anyone be considered well-read who has not read that book?

-The Book of Mormon warns that we should not spurn at the Jews. We should not spurn at the Jews or any of the other descendants of the House of Israel- if they repent, they will be gathered.

-In the Book of Mormon we have record of the earliest sea voyage 40 centuries ago, the Jaredites coming across in vessels tight like a dish.

-“Strong central governments with power hungry leaders lead the country to be burned by fire and the people start over in the ashes. At that point they are free to start over once the ashes are there. That is what we see in the Book of Mormon. There was all kinds of craftsmanship and all kinds of wickedness, lively apparel, we see everything, hurricanes, ship stories, mutiny, landslides burying great cities, tidal waves swallowing entire communities, thousands sailing to begin perhaps Polynesia. Earth convolutions of such level that the face of the whole earth is deformed, these earth spasms being a revolt of the earth against the crucifixion of the it’s Creator. Engineers reading the book will learn that long ago they had cement highways connecting city to city and land to land and reforestation programs with forests were being denuded. Psychologists will find studies of behavior workings of the human mind and the rationalizing process, how men convince themselves that good is bad and bad is good. History unfolds for thousands of years here in the Book of Mormon. Individuals’ lives and causes and effects in the history of races is seen. This book is comprehensive and should be studied by politicians and government leaders to see the rise and fall of empires and the differences between statesmanship and demagoguery. They will see nations born in war live in war deteriorate in war and die in war throughout the centuries. They may find answers to problems of capital labor, dishonesty, confiscatory taxes graft and fraud, of dissections internal rupture and civil wars. They will see a frustrated judge from the iniquity of the people and retiring from the judgement seat to proselyte for righteousness. Princes who prefer to teach man rather than rule over them. A king who works rather than becoming burdensome to those whom he governs. Scientists will read of stones which provided light; they’ll learn that 1500 years before Columbus people knew that the earth was round and revolved around the sun. That a round ball made of brass of curious workmanship would record the feelings of men and their behaviors to such an extent that it would not function properly (when they were being wicked). It also led to wild game to where they would prosper, it worked by the faith of the people. Words would appear on it from time to time increasing the



faith of those who read it. The military man will learn much of strategy and guerrilla warfare. These policies which were not originated in civil war days nor Russia; they were programs of survival long before Columbus. They learn that great cultures go stagnant when war comes and cease to survive when continuous wars make people migrants and when fields are abandoned and live stock is appropriated for non-producing soldiers and when wartime resources are destroyed without replanting with the farmers becoming warriors, men cannot plant cultivate and harvest when they are on the run with long and bloody wars cities being sacked and ruined, confiscatory taxes, ruin and degenerated peoples and decayed cultures; blood shed on the innocent and guilty alike. This book shows the hazards of war and unrighteousness. These barbarians can't prevent the final collapse of peoples. The book promises that "this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles and there shall be no kings upon the land and I will fortify this land against all other nations. I the Lord, the king of heaven will be their king and I will be a light unto them forever that hear my words." Ministers and priests can find texts for sermons and answers to difficult questions of is there life after death, will the body be literally resurrected, where to the spirits of men go death and resurrection, can one be saved in unchastity, what is the correct organization of Christ's Church, can one be saved without baptism, is it wrong to baptize infants, is specific authority required to administer ordinances, is continuous revelation necessary and a reality, is Jesus the actual Son of God. All of this is in the Book of Mormon. Also Jesus blessed little children in the Book of Mormon. Angels encircled them. Jesus organized his Church with 12 Apostles called disciples, and were given the same authority priesthood and keys as was given to their contemporaries Peter James and John. The resurrected Redeemer came to them" of the Book of Mormon.

-In the Book of Mormon we see people who have power over death who are still alive and control the elements and who cannot be burned or put in prisons. These are the 3 Nephites.

-“The Book of Mormon’s interest to psychologists, historians, (etc.), is not the main purpose of the book, its main purpose is its power to transform people into becoming Christlike. This inspired book was never tempered with by bias theologians or historians. Only authorized abridgers and an inspired translation was done to it. Its translations are of God. It is a companion of the bible which the immigrants from Europe brought to America. It combines with the bible although the two were written simultaneously on two different continents in different conditions. It even tells the reaction of people when this hidden record shall be presented to them they will say “A bible a bible we have got a bible and there cannot be any more bible. But thus sayeth the Lord God: oh fools they shall have a bible, and it shall proceed forth from the Jews thou fool that shall say a bible a bible we have got a bible and need no more bible. Know ye not that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath and that I bring forth my word unto the children of men yea even upon all the nations of the earth. Wherefore murmur ye because that ye shall receive more of my word? Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God? That I remember one nation like unto another? And I do this that I may PROVE unto many that I am the same yesterday today and forever and because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another for my work is not yet finished.” The Book of Mormon continues Jesus says he will gather scattered Israel and make them of one fold and one shepherd and that the records of the ten tribes are still to be recovered. It says and it shall come to pass that the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews and the Jews the words of the Nephites and they shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews. We hear the voice of the Almighty warn: Fools mock and they shall mourn; wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God. One Book of Mormon prophet wrote: And if ye believe in Christ ye shall believe in these words for they are the words of Christ. In the final chapter of the book is the never-failing promise that every person who reads the book with a sincere desire to know of its divinity shall be assured of such. Aside from all other interests that the

Book of Mormon holds, this reason for a prayerful study of it remains prominent. Through it we can obtain a true knowledge of God and what he wishes of us.”

-Paul was born of water in Damascus, and of spirit in Arabia in solitude of prayer.

-selling alcohol is filthy lucre

-if work on Sabbath isn't their caught they aren't to blame but woe to who does that to make more money.

-Robin Hood thieving is bad.

-lying essence is in intention not word usage. Can be silence or accentuation.

-give more of your extra income to good causes rather than yourself.

-have short funerals which say “here lies a man”

-knowing honest LDS people, others want to learn more of LDS.

-when you trust people they generally respond with honor.

-one lady did 3 summers of open market stand with \$ jar as cash register, no one robbed her.

-none can hide from angels in heaven photographing and charting your deception, not even a 10 story building could hide you from them. In heaven photographic cameras record all our thoughts, it's not about not drinking coffee, it's about integrity.

-be able to concentrate on a thing and do it.

-be willing to die for your convictions this is top integrity; Daniel was not willing to compromise before high royalty. Others would've sold their souls for offers of power, but Daniel refused since it would cost him his values.

-promises from God exceed all human promises or immunities

-it doesn't matter if you live or die, only that you obey God.

-stay away from areas of questionable integrity

-can't change all the world but can guarantee standards in your own home.

-don't let insurance lapse because death seems far away.

-surely the end is near.

-the 10 virgins represent the LDS Church. Not everyone else in the world. Yea, they had the saving exalting gospel but didn't make it center of their lives.

-when the cry of the 2nd Coming comes, there is no time for preparation.

-in day time, the wise and unwise virgins (in the parable of the Bridegroom's coming) BOTH LOOK ALIKE.

-contribute to oil lamps by temple marriage, missions, scripture study, sacrament meeting attendance, preaching the gospel.

-the 5 foolish virgins knew what to do but procrastinated it. Of them, much is required.

-he saw heaven in the temple where the 8th of 8 children was being sealed to a spouse. The man thought himself unsuccessful in life, but it was one of the greatest success stories I'd ever heard.

-there are celestial worlds plural.

-he saw heaven in a home where a Navajo family barren unable to have children, had adopted 18 orphans.

-he saw heaven another time with in a home with mismatched chairs and old worn rugs and many children home all cooperated in interdependence, they didn't apologize for the meal furniture or children. This was great to see in our day of only 1-2 children in a home, and they oft spoiled and bratty. The woman wasn't one that people would paint a portrait of, but had handsome well picked clothes, and kept hair, and a smile. The man was a working man.

-the ten commandments were known to Adam and were known of in pre-mortality.

-planting, harvesting hay, fishing, vacating, shows, races, hunting, beach or canyon with picnic baskets or sports, these are wicked on the Sabbath. Many LDS good at all else are bad in this aspect.

-camping on Sabbath with 1 hour of Church in mountains and the rest the day in activities is breaking the Sabbath.

-The Sabbath is for games with the small children, writing devotional poetry, preparing lessons for next Sunday, writing letters, napping, visiting the sick.

-if the church service is a failure to you, you have failed. You go to church to worship despite the quality of the lessons.

- if we keep the Sabbath, the Lord has promised our fields will yield their increase, and the trees their fruit.
- like Enos pray till relief comes. Can the Lord resist such? Who has prayed thus day and night? 10 hours? 5? 1? 30 minutes? How much has your soul hungered? Don't satisfy yourself with some hack kneed word and phrase. (Spencer W Kimball, "Faith Precedes the Miracle")
- to a return missionary in doubt, ask if they have read the New Testament, and the number of times they have read the Book of Mormon since their mission.
- not reading scriptures or tithing or praying is taking off the arm on of God and the Devil's fiery darts will get you.
- students too busy for institute of religion contributes to apostasy,
- missionaries: fulfill the call you have accepted.
- the powers of darkness are ready to fight and have more effective ways to kill the souls of men than guns and bombs.
- people are attracted to the word new, like non-objective journalism, and children-less family.
- 2nd hand smoke, obscene pictures, vulgar art, why aren't these limited to protect the freedom of others?
- people want freedom from marriage via divorce, but it's captivity for the children when such happens.
- detention homes aren't product of poverty so much as instability.
- evil to offer contraceptives to people of all ages.
- people want sexual freedom which is to exploit.
- no one loses testimony when staying close to the Lord in Church service prayer and scripture study
- with full armor of God we can see through Devil's deceits.
- Malachi "you have said it is vain to serve God... we call the proud happy... but who think on the Lord shall be the Lords in the day he gathers his jewels." Earth will burn all wicked but not the righteous. But many blessings are even here today before judgement, like good children, no amount of money can buy that.
- The Lord will fulfill all promises to us.

-growth contentment satisfaction peace and joy come to the righteous. Those who live but for today have a retribution certain coming.

-Prodigal couldn't get back what had been dissipated. The good son had his inheritance.

-whatever blood sweat and tears righteousness requires it is worth it. Perfection and Godhood come.

-the temptations and rebellions are same today but come looking different. Bored youth demand new kicks. Cars make evil much more possible.

-narcotics are introduced by unsuspecting youth.

-the little innovation becomes a dictator. The so-called freedom becomes object serfdom with a ring in the nose (sign of slavery).

-at Stanford drinking is accepted by piers parents and society.

-a small growth may become large and kill.

-people who use alcohol cease to know how to have fun without it.

-alcohol is a demon making some alcoholics others to think they always need it, others to accidental death.

-saw mighty tree get mistletoe tiny implant and destroyed whole tree, large growths of mistletoe all over it, taking all it's nutrient. Alcohol and cheating are like that. they become robbery and armed robbery.

-Satan and sin are attractive, easy, glamorous, pleasant companions, promises immunity from needs like hunger temporarily.

-Cain had murder not in his heart when it's jealousy in his heart. At first, then it grows.

-people sin for acceptance to not seem dumb etc.

-tobacco becomes habit with time and it takes control.

-1 cigarette becomes 100 then 1000 then innumerable.

-sin is always planted by little things.

-immorality seeds are passionate kissing, petting, and masturbation.

-some live conventional commandments but fail at things like treating family members well.

-self justification is enemy of repentance and the spirit ceases to strive with such people.

-mislabeling and misrepresenting your product is sin.

-fulfill your contracts and keep your sacred word!

-Gandhi said there are 99 who believe in honesty for every 1 who practice it.

[The Mortal Messiah \(all 4 volumes\) by Bruce R. McConkie – Book Notes](#)

For a video presentation of this document, [click here](#).

McConkie served in the Quorum of the 12 Apostles

### **The Mortal Messiah by Bruce R McConkie Volume 1**

-when we have faith like the brother of Jared we will be able to understand the sealed portion of the Book of Mormon.

-keeping the Sabbath day holy means having a whole day focused purely on spiritual things; God knew that if men would do this they would have the strength to avoid temptation the rest of the week.

-this book was written about 70 years after Talmage Jesus the Christ. It's to build upon that

-ever LDS should study the book Jesus the Christ by Talmage.

-Christ grew up in a spiritually degenerate society like Sodom. He was planted in difficult dry ground.

-we don't have every gospel principal, but we do have the fullness of the everlasting gospel, that which is needed to have everlasting glory in the hereafter.

- the modern Red Sea we have to follow our current prophet over is doubt.
- as they dressed for Passover in robes to travel, so must we dress in the robes of righteousness.
- the little amount of leaven raises the whole lump; this is to say that the gospel has the power to transform our entire lives.
- the pouring out of water was symbolic of pouring out of the Holy Ghost in the Last days. this is from the Jewish festivals.
- the palm leaves are symbolic of what we now use white handkerchiefs in the hosanna shouts; shouts of hosanna were given in the ancient festivals of the Jews.
- the 8th day was also like a Sabbath, \*this is to me like how we do family home evenings on Mondays!
- day of Atonement and other day the women dressed in white and went around the vineyards singing and dancing for the men to pick their spouse.
- they fasted sundown to after sundown the next day when the stars could be seen. \*how do it now? Our Sabbath begins at a different time than theirs. What is to be done?
- synagogues are essential to salvation; God's people must always build places to meet in together or his fullness of blessings can't go to them (ordinances etc.). It always has been this way.
- every time the truth has been on earth it has been led by the Melchizedek Priesthood.
- about ,1200 members per synagogue in ancient Jerusalem.
- almost everything will have Holiness to the Lord inscribed on it in the Millennium.
- Jesus of no doubt went to school as a lad in a synagogue.
- on Sunday we let our flocks and herds fend for themselves, and we leave our careers alone. No golf. No fishing.
- Jesus taught in the synagogues for in them came the people who wanted to learn; he healed therein for there came the people who had faith to be healed .
- in ancient Israel like modern, Jehovah called all people to worship Him in the temple and to work and serve in the temple.
- there came to be unneeded self-denial on Sabbaths.
- the home of Joseph and Mary was poorer than most homes in the USA today.

- men married at 16, never later than 20. Women often younger than the men, namely at 14.
- at 2 years the Jewish children were weened
- at 3 years fathers were to teach the children scriptures and wise sayings and benedictions.
- the children memorize read and wrote the Levitical prayers.
- at 16 or 17 boys were sent to the academies where the rabbi's taught.
- before every meal the families washed and prayed.
- private prayers were said morning and night.
- devout fathers wore phylacteries during prayer with 4 scriptures in them.
- all Jews of Jesus' day were apostate except those who followed Jesus.
- the people of the day of the flood of Noah were destroyed because they were beyond the reach of saving grace.
- the apostasy of the Jews of Jesus' day is one of people who memorized Messianic prophecies; who knew the Messiah was soon to come among them yet rejected him. A people who had the Aaronic Priesthood and the gospel of repentance.
- some find it easy to fight against the truth because of their nature, but they can save themselves through righteousness at any time.
- God said I'll send you all to earth and save those of you who obey me.
- to love Satan more than God, like Cain and the Jews of Jesus' day, is to obey not God's path but what Satan incurs.
- modern Christendom of today can learn a lesson from Jews of Jesus' day, people who should have been the Lord's people, like Christians today which should have been the Lord's people
- throws down mega rebukes against the Jews of Jesus' day
- speaks some 20 minutes of the stupid practices of the Jews at EXTREMELY Ridiculous extremes!
- high priests among the Jews of Jesus' day were that by way of investiture not like their holy forefathers



-Aaron had the Melchizedek Priesthood and was called to preside over the Aaronic Priesthood; the presiding Bishop over the church if you will.

-Aaronic Priesthood offices today are comparable to those of the time of Moses and Jesus.

-Ezra was a prophet and a scribe.

-without prophets the world turns to scholars for their knowledge about God.

-as a general rule, more scripture such as the sealed portions of the Book of Mormon are withheld from the less spiritually apt.

-no book of sacred writ is forever lost.

-Melchizedek stopped the mouths of lions; these accounts were in the Jewish book of Exodus which is more correct than the book which modern Christendom possesses.

-Abraham had vision of Jesus Christ, such is recorded by Joseph Smith in the "Inspired Version" of the bible which Joseph Smith wrote.

-apocrypha much correct in it much not correct in it, inspired people will benefit from studying it; for others it's best to stick to the more solid scriptures.

-pseudepigraphic book of Enoch speaks of 1000-year Millennium then another 1000 years before the end of the worlds temporal existence, speaks of premortality, etc. Jude appears to quote from this book. Know that the Jews at Jesus' day had a more perfect version of the bible than the world by large has today.

-uninspired men almost never agree on the meaning of select passages of scripture.

-The Jews of Jesus' day were not inspired, and hence could not understand the scriptures, and that made it so they could not apply the scriptures into their lives.

— is not exaltation a family matter? Is it not, as Elder McConkie has said in the Mortal Messiah, about being a father, and for women about being a mother? Yes, God's constituents are HIS CHILDREN. Over whom he reigns with justice.

-like how Christ told the people of his days, salvation is of the Jews (as they had the prophet's writings etc.); similarly were Christ among the people of the world today, he would tell all Christendom, salvation is of the Latter-day Saints.

-the Law of Moses is better than the Christian sects of the world today, and it's better than any other world religion, including Islam and Buddhism.

-2nd century B.C. world leaders were very wicked declaring religion devoid of morals; sensuality considered alright for slaves to participate in, soldiers encouraged to take advantage of women while on duty, thought that death was a sweet release from life not a punishment and hence did no death penalty to criminals, led by examples and teachings of promoting suicide, thought sexual relations with any person was fine, etc.

-God the Father, Jesus Christ, and The Holy Ghost are three separate persons, each a male person.

-In the same sense that our birth parents are our parents, God The Father is the parent of Jesus Christ.

-Contrary to popular opinion, God the Father has a body of flesh and bones. He has a being. He is only in one place at one time, although his influence is felt through all immensity.

-Saying the Holy Ghost came upon Mary in the conception of Christ does not mean the Holy Ghost is Christ's Father. God the Father is Christ's father.

-The Lord is a man of war

-When the Jesus went to cleanse the temple, it was him coming suddenly unto his house, but it is at the Second Coming that he will purify the sons of Levi in so doing again. (\*This could refer to the judgements to come upon who attend the LDS temples unworthily).

-No one tries to stop Jesus when he destroys the property of the merchants as Jesus cleansed the temple; there is no bitterness as to financial loss; they merely asked what authority he had to cleanse the temple, since it was initially their duty. They did not object because their conscious brought weakness. "Vice cannot stand one moment against virtue's lifted arm." Devoured as they were, the sellers in the temple could not deny the deed Jesus did in overthrowing the temple. Them asking Jesus by what authority he did this was a sign that they began to fear and actually consider that this might be the Son of God.

-All who saw Jesus' miracles were constrained to say that this was truly the Son of God. The only ones who saw his miracles and denied that he was the Son of God were wicked people.

-Faith founded merely on miracles leaves much to be desired (it's not enough).

-It's somewhat derogatory to call Thomas "Doubting Thomas" because he said to the other Apostles, let us also go with him to die.

-Nicodemus should have known that they could not go on living under Herod, they had to come back to how the ancients lived, that is, according to the Spirit.

-Nicodemus and others probably knew about how Jesus was a teacher from God, as seen in him saying WE know that thou art a teacher come from God.

-The type of life that God lives, that quality of life, is reserved for the sons of men. The requirement is to believe on the Son of God, who came to the world not to condemn the world, but to save it. (\*People condemn themselves by the way they act, Christ is come to help us out of those dead ways we live.)

-We the people reject the doctrines of faith repentance baptism and the reception of the Holy Ghost, Christ cannot possibly communicate to them the deeper doctrines of the gospel.

-to build God's kingdom is to build up his church

-the sin offering had no fragrance, it was a dreadful necessity.

-the red heifer was to clean all people and was burnt thoroughly unlike the other offerings (\*it is a very particularly a type of Christ's Atonement)

-Jehovah forgave sins and used animal sacrifices to represent that (\*They were symbolic of giving up something that you love, like how Jesus Christ would give up his life for his people)

-the gospel of Jesus Christ will be preached in such a way that those who reject it will lose their souls.

-the fear of the Lord is the type of fear that enlarges our souls.

-The old law was nailed with Christ to the cross and the new law rose with him from the tomb as he was resurrected on the third day since his death.

-circumcision as found in the Law of Moses was a way of the parents showing symbolically that they offer their posterity to the Lord, showing that they will have the child obey the ways of the Lord, showing that the child will serve the Lord, showing that they would teach the child the covenants that the House of Israel had made with Jehovah, it showed that the parent would show the child the right way to go from the very start.

-Jesus was tempted more sorely than any human could endure, yet he never sinned. No more has been tempted in a more severe manor than he.

-Those who cannot do miracles do not have faith.

-Where there is faith all miracles are forthcoming.

-When Christ told his mother woman what have I to do with thee it was during his ministry, and he was then acting independently, choosing for himself when and where he would preach his gospel.

-Those who are not burn again spiritually cannot understand deep spiritual things, neither can those who live in darkness.

-of old full-time ministers were to not let the people sleep because of the their words; Jesus did this also; he is the one who commanded such.

-In addition to the baptism of fire, Jesus baptized people in water by immersion as John the Baptist did. The disciples of Jesus did this also.

-John the Baptist was a legal administrator for God, so when he told Herod and Herodias that their marriage was adulterous, at that point if they did not repent they would be damned.

-Herod almost repented but the seeds of repentance soon died in the stony soil of sin wherein they were planted.

-In John 4 Jesus tells the woman at the well if she knew the gift of God she would ask of him to drink; the gift is Jesus Christ; for God so loved the world he gave his Only Begotten Son.

-"I have meat ye know not of" here Jesus is referring to how the gospel was like meat to him. Those called to the work of God it is their meat to do that work. It fills them to an extent. They forget about temporal things.

-Like John the Baptist, Jesus Christ, Joseph Smith and others, all pilgrims of God have to suffer bondage for a season.

-As seen in the woman at the well speaking of her father's worshiping in the mount Gerizim, we see that even carnal people have some form of belief about religion, something that appeases their spiritual part of them that does not conflict with their ways of life.

-Like he told the woman at the well, Jesus had no problem telling the would-be believers that their forms of belief were wrong.

-To the woman at the well Jesus bore witness of the two top truths of eternity: of God the Father, then of his Messianic Divine Sonship.

-Jesus broke tradition in speaking to the woman at the well who was a Samaritan; it was ageist tradition for a man to speak to a woman in public. It was certainly seen as bad to be seen speaking with a "woman of easy virtue", but Jesus had control of the situation and went through Samaria for the very purpose of teaching her and others of her people.

-Those who are doing the work of the Lord have consuming passion that takes their every thought and word, that taxes their every strength, that requires of them their every ability

-Eventually Jesus declared open war (in plainly condemning his opposers etc.)

-Jesus would deal with the House of Israel before the gentiles, for they were more prepared for the truths of eternity, they were more prepared from developing spiritual talent and ability in the pre-mortal existence. He therefore was carrying out the divine order.

He also helped some gentiles like the woman who begged of him, letting the fire of her faith burn through the limits so common among her people.

some books/authors referenced to read:

-Edersheim

-Cannon Ferrar

### **The Mortal Messiah by Bruce R McConkie Volume 2**

-it's the enmity we have for what the world likes that makes us saints (somewhere in 2nd half of the book I think).

-who tries to kill and who successfully kills are equally as guilty, it's the heart that counts.

-Mote in eye is referring to the LDS

-Have we not cast out many devils in thy name and in thy name performed many miracles? Depart, I never knew you, you never knew me. This is directed to LDS Priesthood holders.

-many who have part of the gospel in other churches have that satisfy their innate desire to worship and when they hear about what we have to say they ask why we say such silly things and claim they have enough with what they have. This is not good. They are not following Jesus Christ all the way.

-we are to have put upon us Christlike attributes during mortality to qualify to live with Christ in Eternity. This is the life where we are charged with the developments of those attributes, and if we don't complete this task while in mortality, we will have revoked privileges in the life to come.

-woman washing Jesus' feet in Simons home was not then forgiven but earlier forgiven, she was baptized and used to be a sinner but now a Saint.

Jesus taught Simon in the occurrence that his supposed righteousness was of naught, he taught in that way that Pharisees thought that 2 way in debt people one who owed more would love the forgiver more when in reality both would love him tons. Simon understood this though and it got the message through to him. \*I see Jesus witnessed of his divinity

in this, showing that he himself was the forgiver of sin in that he rebuked Simon for his treatment toward him and praised the woman's treatment of him. Guests uninvited could follow the invited guests in and not get kicked out in that day.

-Jesus taught that there was no more middle ground, that who does not keep the commandments he taught, is his enemy and is against him.

-Jesus chose his intimates very carefully.

-those who don't gather with Jesus by their indifference and indecision scatter abroad.

-Jesus preached hard doctrine, that you don't have to do evil to be cursed, that the thought or the word of evil brings it, for these prove the heart.

-Jesus didn't give huge signs to unbelievers, such is for who have faith, and agency must be respected. Besides he had done many miracles from heaven. Also, the one big sign he gives, and the only one, is the sign of the prophet Jonas, that he would rise from the dead. Also, the creation bears witness of the creator.

### **The Mortal Messiah by Bruce R McConkie Volume 3**

-Jesus paid a tax he did not owe with money he did not earn via the insight to use the fish. Jesus is a Lord not a commoner- he is not to pay the tax, but did so, so as to not offend anyone.

-All infants are innocent.

-though there were varying degrees of sin in pre-mortality, at birth all infants are clean from sin because of the Atonement which was prepared "from the foundation of the earth"

-those who preach false doctrines shall be thrust down to hell.

-it is better to remove one member of the body of Christ, one person that is evil, than to leave him on the body and cause the whole to become evil and cast into hell.

-if some go down to hell, so be it. don't go there yourself.

- every member of the church will be tested in all things to see if he will abide the day, regardless of what happens to others in his family.
- Some taught Jesus was Lucifer incarnate.
- The leaven of the pharisees was the damning doctrine they taught which would bring the death of the Son of God.
- Bone healing slowly is as much a miracle as immediate healing.
- Who preach against the truth can never agree on things. What they believe doesn't matter, their master the Devil only cares that they don't believe the truth.
- Deep doctrine often comes to new converts to prove them. It may not fit with their prior religious understandings.
- When Peter said be it far from thee he was appealing to Jesus' human side like Lucifer.
- When those closest to you turn against you they can become your worst enemies.
- Peter could fall even a moment from his testimony and was rebuked accordingly in the above instance.
- If we suffer with Christ we will also be with him when all tears cease.
- Break not the commandments for to save your lives for who save their lives here loose them in the life to come.
- Were it possible to gain the whole world by losing your soul you would have chump change in comparison, merely a pauper to what you could have had should you have kept your soul.
- Eternal Life is the greatest gift of God because those who receive it become like him.
- What we know is sufficient to get us eternal life.
- When Christ said some among him would not die until his Second Coming that they would see such in the flesh, he was referring to John and we know not who else.
- There is much we know not because we have not reached the spiritual status of the ancients.
- The 2nd Comforter is Jesus Christ visiting you from time to time.

- On the mount of transfiguration, Elohim (Heavenly Father) in a cloud certainly did appear, and Jesus certainly saw him on that occasion. This cloud is anciently called the Shekinah, which God uses to hide himself from our sight. On this occasion at transfiguration mount Jesus could see the Father but others could not.
- We can't understand the visions he had at that mount unless we have the Holy Ghost.
- The earth itself will be transfigured at the Millennial day.
- Jews know not if all or some will rise in the resurrection, nor when it will be (we do know these things).
- 7 Commandments were given to Noah at least as we see from an ancient record.
- Many people left the messiah when he did not give them manna that their bellies might bulge.
- Sinners always fear the righteous indignation that may burst forth from the righteous at any time.
- All evil spirits are evil beyond imagination.
- Those who suffer for Christ's sake know he is their Lord.
- Even those who know Christ is their Lord need reassurance that he will help them in their time of need.
- Just as there are levels of governing in heaven, so there are in hell some demons in charge of others.
- Just as there are levels of heaven, there are levels of hell.
- Joseph Smith said there are levels of faith; although one may not have the faith to move a mountain he may still have the faith to heal a person.
- By experience with Christ, Peter's rough edges were smoothed, and he was prepared to guide the Church after Christ.
- The Apostles thought of who should be best, but it was directly in opposition to Jesus' selfless service. We should not seek any position making us above another person.
- To be a kind and wise father is better than to lead an army or corporate business; there will be many who will be greatest in the kingdom of heaven for the is something any may achieve, it is something shared there.
- This is a work of cooperation, those who wrote the scriptures plant the seeds, and we go out and harvest from their efforts.



- The Apostle is to be as the Seventy, and the Seventy to be as the Elder.
- The brethren of the Church should be as one flesh.
- Deny lusts of the flesh and keep all commandments is to take up your cross.
- Christ permitted himself a righteous man to be slain, thus we see that sometimes he lets other righteous persons be slain as well.
- The 12 Apostles are the people God would trust to lead the entire Church.
- All of the 12 Apostles have the keys and can exercise them under the leadership of the senior Apostle, the President of the Church.
- No power to the 12 Apostles that won't come to any member be they righteous!
- If we want more revelation on a topic let the Brethren know and God will lose the information to them.
- God's servants are the members of His Church.
- God's Kingdom on earth is the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints and it prepares people for the heavenly Kingdom.
- It is always the wicked who seek to put people who sin against them into prison.
- In our day the first Seventy were who had laid their all on the altar of Zion's Camp.
- A Seventy is like an Apostle and where he is the Church and Kingdom of God are and where he is not they are not.
- Work for the living takes precedence over work for the dead.
- When Christ's servants speak before people it's like Jesus were there addressing them.
- There always are more people that would hear the message of the gospel than messengers to tell it with exception to the days of Noah (\*The last days are to be as the days of Noah).
- Seek not to be banqueted and feasted in the homes of the rich, but eat with the meek, the common.
- Jesus did many more miracles than are recorded. What are recorded are merely types of what Jesus did.

- The gospel always divides people (\*recall Jesus' saying "I came not to bring peace but a sword")
- True learning can stand totally independent and ignorant of what is taught in schools.
- People long make the mistake of knowledge for wisdom, or degrees for education.
- Spiritual darkness is the worst kind of darkness.
- There are no limits to the power of faith.
- When two are united and ask something of the Lord not amiss the answer will come. Ask and receive.
- When you want new revelation, ask the Brethren together and God will tell the Brethren.
- We will always be in debt to God.
- Not knowing what a Seventy is is itself a sign of apostasy.
- When Jesus cleansed the temple he spoke so loudly that all therein heard him.
- Satan is great at quoting scripture to explain himself.
- Were Jesus on earth today, people would do the same things to him as they do to his servants.
- When ignorant of how to interpret scriptures we can be led on by superstitions.
- Prejudice from supposed learning in divinity is the worst.
- When Christ said "I am the light of the world" he was declaring that he is the Messiah, for the ancient prophets taught the Messiah would bring light to Israel and the Gentiles, and unto them that sit in darkness hath the light shined. But although Israel had been waiting four thousand years to hear someone come along and say that they were the light of the world, they rejected Jesus Christ, he who taught that he indeed is the Son of God.
- Just because you don't know something does not mean that thing is not true. Those who do know truth will testify of such.
- Only those who are baptized and receive the Holy Ghost can go where Jesus is.
- If you believe not in Christ ye shall die in your sins and be damned in eternity.

-They (\*the Jewish leaders of Christ's day and those who carry on their work) knew Jesus was damning them for their contempt with him.

-Jesus' identity was of record. They knew who he was. Their inquiries about who he was were signs of lack of belief in what he had already plainly declared.

-Apostate people always claim allegiance to the past prophets but reject the current ones of their day.

-Our families and nations we are born into are direct result of premarital behavior.

-Disability can come to anyone and is not related to premarital behavior.

-We become the seed of Abraham in the full sense as we obey the gospel law. Religious Jews at Jesus' time thought they were Abraham's seed, and they were, but they fell from that since they tried to kill Jesus. Abraham did not try to kill Jesus or his prophets, and so they were really not acting like Abraham whom they professed to have as their father. Jesus said that if they did the works of Abraham they were the seed of Abraham.

-Christ said, "before Abraham was I am" this is to say "before Abraham was I, Jehovah." They wanted to stone him seeing as he had openly proclaimed that He is Jehovah. The self-existent one. The Son of God whose name was known unto Abraham as Jehovah.

-The Seventy and the Twelve Apostles were rugged forthright not tainted by theology of the time.

-In the eternal sense, there is nothing but glory and triumph for the faithful ministers.

-Most of the Seventy and Twelve were Galileans, and were less involved with the ritual rabbinism and the damning scribal theology.

-Christ taught people the truth that he, the Son, is as the Father, and the Father is as him.

-Christ is not proud and pompous and austere as the Rabbis who then lead the people.

-Mary Magdalene was a traveling missionary companion of Jesus.

-Marth was as spiritual and righteous as Mary, she witnessed of the Messiah when Lazarus was to be risen from the dead, but in the instance of wanting Mary to cease to hear Jesus to help her with household chores, she learned a lesson from the Master's gentle rebuke. After the needed temporal food the only needful thing remaining is spiritual food.

-The Jewish leaders ascertained their doom when they said we know Moses spoke with God but not this Jesus.

- Christ opening physical eyes showed that he has power to open spiritual eyes. Obedience to his gospel opens spiritual eyes.
- Those who think they can spiritually see but reject Christ are actually spiritually blind.
- People who come into this earth with premortal spiritual talent will follow Jesus Christ.
- The Sheepfold of Christ is not to be found with the Christian sects of our day. The Kingdom of God is the Church of Jesus Christ. It is his earthly kingdom that serves to prepare people to live in his heavenly kingdom (\*plainly he is here referring to The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, as quoted earlier, salvation is of the Latter-day Saints).
- All ministers who testify not of Christ including those of Jesus' day are not of Christ and are thieves and robbers.
- The true sheep of God will not heed the ministers who testify not of Christ.
- Jesus didn't let people revel in polemics by contending with them on points of religion that never apply to our lives.
- People wanting to kill Jesus, having seen him work good, heal the sick, cure the blind, this is parallel and is just as the people wanting to kill God for creating the earth and giving them life.
- To them who would not believe him, Christ told them to believe in his works, the which could only come from the power of the divine.
- Holy God would not let an unholy man do the kind of things Jesus did. It would not be possible. The power of God would not enter into an evil person to enable him to do the things that Jesus did. Only a holy man could do what Jesus did, for he did it by the power of God.
- Good works means good man.
- The most helpless stupidity was when the man rebuked the multitude for letting a person be healed on the Sabbath. Not only is the Sabbath for such, but the multitude was not even involved, he was merely avoiding the Master.
- It's easy to live a set of rules, like the rabbi's and pharisees of Jesus' time; but it's difficult to do what the gospel asks, that is to be humble, spiritual, self-sacrificing, a disciple, one who loves God and all people.
- Those who were unwilling to come to the Lord's supper (see Luke 5) are the people who aren't willing to take time away from their business for religion, or away from pleasures of this world, for a better to come.
- There is a day when the door to the kingdom is closed with finality and no more people are let in to the Celestial Kingdom.

-People who rejected the prophets and see them with crowned heads working for God will weep and howl.

-We must be willing to die or give up our family members for the Kingdom of God. Duty to God takes precedence over personal or family obligation. All is to be forsaken if retaining them means losing eternal life.

-Should we need to leave family friends or possessions for the Kingdom of God, friends we will find in the Kingdom of God will be closer to us than the blood relatives that we had had would have been to us. The property of the Saints will be at our disposal, and all things will be ours. What we lose in sacrifice for the Kingdom of God is like clay in our fist, and we need to let it go, for its nothing compared to what we will receive.

-Apostate people always think they are treading where the Saints have trod when in reality ancient prophets foretold of modern ones whom they, the supposed followers, reject.

-Rabbi's teach people to rejoice when one who opposes God perishes, but Jesus taught that there is greatest rejoicing in heaven over the soul that repents. This is a stark contrast!

-What was given to the prodigal son was concession not legal petition.

-To inherit all the father has is for the son who served the father; the prodigal who returns is a ruler, but not like the son who served the father, for that son inherits all that the father has.

-Friend the mammon of unrighteousness shows that people set worldly goals and fight to attain them; shall not we who have heavenly goal be more valiant in our fight for those than are the people of the world toward their goals?

-Use your wealth as a servant, don't let it become your master.

-Jesus taught that no man who trusts in riches will make it to heaven.

-At death, those who are inclined toward God remain so, and those who are inclined toward rebellion remain so. There may and will be some change with time, but not at first.

-When you've done all asked of you, say you are an unprofitable servant, having done no more than that which was your duty to do.

-Lazarus was in the tomb for four days, it was at four days that the Jews believed the spirit left the body and the person was totally dead. Jesus intentionally waited this long to raise Lazarus from the dead.

-Once Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead the people were even more set on slaying him, fearing that the people would follow him as their Messiah, and that they would lose their leadership positions. The then High Priest suggested that they kill Jesus to save the nation thinking that the Romans would take over otherwise; he was wrong in his thought, but the

Lord did speak through him to make a Messianic prophecy of Jesus Christ that by the death of Christ, the nation would live.

-In spiritual things there is no difference between men and women.

-Jesus could find the tomb of Lazarus and remove the stone in front of it, he even had power to raise him from the dead; but he asked people to do these things to build and test their faith.

-Jesus lead a movement; he brought his kingdom to earth; the people asked him when the kingdom would come, and he told them it already had, that he brought it, and that they rejected it by rejecting him. The movement Jesus was leading was not to be done by men taking up weapons of war, but it was to change people's lives and offer them salvation eternal.

-The Church is a widow until Christ return, for it is betrayed to him.

-Satan wants none to marry, but that we go around having sex with each other like cattle, becoming like animals, living in sin, not having a family. God wants us to have a family, and for that family to grow and remain eternally.

-If all men and women lived in accordance to the gospel there would be no divorce.

-At times God allows divorce and plural marriage but in the perfect situation there is no divorce. That is the higher law. Today it's not adultery to marry a divorced person or to divorce, but in the Millennium, it will be adultery to get a divorce.

-only God is good; so when a person called him good master, he asked why do you call me good for only one is good even my father. He was saying that the only person that is good is God. He was saying that he is God, and that he is good for he makes no sin, but asked the person why he called him good seeing as the man rejected Christs teachings that he is God. Christ was saying, only call me good if you believe I am God, for only God is good. Only God is without sin, and I am such.

-Many are called but few are chosen, this is a daunting statement. Only few become as God. Many go on missions, but few reap the reward of those missions in full.

-Those who are called but don't live up to being chosen are as people walking in darkness though they be in the noon day sun.

-Life with Jesus for his disciples was like a refiner's fire, day after day getting their dross burnt off by the decisiveness of his sayings.

-The disciples thought of the crown of glory, but Jesus was humble and though of the bitter cup he would have to drink, and the cross he would be hung on. The people did not understand that such the crown is not without the bitter cup.

- Jesus usually taught doctrine before performing miracles, for the miracles could then act as a divine sealing upon his words.
- All who do good deeds will eventually learn that those deeds were done unto Christ.
- Living Lazarus was a sign of deadness of the Mosaic Law. He walked with Jesus.
- There always is a Judas to complain about how money we use to serve God could have been given to the poor.
- Judas complained of Mary's money on ointment for Jesus' feet but for 1/3 of that cost he sold Jesus.
- The Hosanna shout to Jesus was something only sung to Jehovah; to God to save them. Thousands of believing people shouted such to him. The Rabbi's thought is gall and wormwood, and asked Jesus to stop them, but Jesus knew it was destined and said if they didn't shout it the very rocks would.
- Cursing the fig tree by Jesus was for man's good. If a man sees a tree that does nothing he likewise cuts it down. All on earth is for the benefit of man and to teach man. It's no crime to get rid of a tree that does no good.
- Mary anointed Jesus as a king and for his burial.
- The people knew Christ was the suffering servant as Isaiah said but wanted position, so they slew him.
- Religious people of Jesus' day had a form of godliness to cover their inner greed and love for money and property and prestige, the things of this world.
- The questions that the rabbi's and scribes and pharisees asked Jesus must have been formed in the council rooms of Lucifer himself.
- (I see great conspiracy that people who are wolves wear lamb masks but actively are evil.)
- The top goal in life for a Melchizedek Priesthood holder is to raise an eternal family.
- The opinions of those who know not the scriptures nor the power of God are begrudging.
- When Jesus spoke of people who neither marry nor are given in marriage, he was referring to the wicked, the people of this world who live after the ways of this world. The ungodly (\*He is saying they can't marry in the next life).
- The point of the entire law was the spirit of obedience. We must remember the merciful God is also a God of Vengeance with not only the power to bless but the power to curse.

-The Lord said to my Lord; here he is referring to God the Father and God the Son Jesus Christ. David's son Jesus was his Lord since Jesus was of divine birth.

-Scribes and Pharisees loved their blindness for their deeds were evil.

-If one plot of the Scribes and Pharisees failed they went stubbornly and with vengeance into another stage of attack.

-Scribes and Pharisees say and do not. They make heavy burdens for others which they won't touch with one finger.

-(\*Oh when will we believe that they were evil and that there are like evil men today in sheep's clothing!)

-At the judgement bar it will not be an excuse if we have followed false doctrine from a false minister who taught such and worked evil. Let such be damned if that is what they have merited.

-False ministers want self ennoblement not to help the lost sheep.

-False ministers rule over the sheep with wrath and cruelty.

-False ministers love robes of color etc. are their desires. They cover up their desires for such with priestcraft.

-Jesus declared the damnation of hell upon Jewish rulers of his day.

-We are all, Christ included, brothers, because we are all the children of the same Father.

-There are only few to thunder the doctrine the word of the Lord from Mt. Sinai, and there are masses of people to hear it.

-The Widows Mite is worth one half a penny today in USA money. The lowest legal amount that could be put in the treasury, but it was her all.

-The only nobility to be saved is that of righteousness.

-Black white bond free any nationality can be saved by Jesus Christ.

-At Christ's baptism the Holy Ghost descended in bodily form as that of a dove.

-There never has been nor will be anyone spiritually minded who has doubt about who Jesus Christ is.

-Some believed Christ, but the majority rejected him. Not only the leaders rejected him, but many people.

-God the Father is such because he has children. God the Son is such because he has a Father who is God.



- When Jesus said Jerusalem who kills the prophets he did so in great sorrow.
- When Jesus said this house is left unto you desolate speaking of the temple he did so with tears streaming down his face.
- False ministers eventually give way to the evil they are and turn to persecution against the Saints.
- Often people find legal charges to raise against those who bear witness of the truth.
- Robes of silks etc. does anyone really believe that that is the same Christianity that Jesus and his Apostles set up? Has no one read the prophecy that there must be a falling away first before the Second Coming of Jesus Christ?
- When people go to false churches they say, "how can one which builds such beautiful cathedrals as these be false?" We see, all but the very elect will be deceived.
- The gathering of Israel commences before the Second Coming. It is one of the signs of the times.
- All nations must hear the gospel before Christ comes for the grand Second Coming.
- The wars of our days will make all war of the past seem as children's skirmishes.
- Carnal men will think war is a way of life rather than God rebuking and chastening us.
- At the time of the restoration and before the Second Coming the devil will be of greater influence than ever in the history of the world.
- We live in the times of the Gentiles, but that era is soon coming to an end and the era of the Jews, when they will hear the gospel, is coming.
- Sodomitic influences will be consumed with fire.
- 200 million men will make an army.
- Jesus will come again when all nations are at war and ready for the fire he will send upon them.
- Currently we have flawed and fallible men declaring the gospel, but soon the very angels will be declaring it, and they will make no error, no worthy person will be neglected.
- It will seem as though the very stars hurl themselves out of the heavens.

- All remaining on earth at the Messiahs coming will see him and recognize him for who he is.
- The LDS will be there when Jesus comes.
- Christians will be there.
- Those who don't watch for Christ to come will be cut off.
- Who mock the Saints will be judged by calamities of earth.
- Those who belittle true believers for their creeds and doctrine will be consumed at the brightness of the coming of the Lord.
- Even the heathen will get a glory tolerable for them.
- Those without law will come forth in the first resurrection.
- We don't know the day or hour of his coming but the season and generation we know clearly, it is the one wherein the signs of the times are being fulfilled.
- The Saints who don't pay an honest tithe are counted as among those who will not stand the day of the coming of Christ.
- Though two live by each other the wicked one will be destroyed and the righteous spared.
- The righteous will be taken to where the Saints are gathered.
- Even many of the Saints will be surprised at the time of Christ's coming.
- Priesthood holders and Apostles who watch over Christ's Church will reign forever but those of them who are led astray of them who may even retain their positions, they will be as stubble.
- To who much is given men will expect much.
- Those of Jesus' day sought to read the signs of the times how much more ought we try to read them seeing as we are the very people who live in the time of the fulfillment of those signs!
- The oil of righteousness must be bought at the market of obedience.
- Salvation is an individual matter only for who keep the commandments and have the spirit of God in them.

-The Lord will not be appeased with merely Moses' righteousness he expects Moses to lead the people to Mt. Saini. So it is with us we must help others to salvation.

-People are not born equal but come with talents from premarital obedience to law.

-Those who operate on true principals and succeed in this life shall have opportunity to rule greater in the next life.

-The Apostle who is over the whole church and the bishop whose realm is hardly a stones cast gain the same reward in the next life if they are both true and faithful.

-No false minister is content to go on his headlong course to hell along he tries to get people to go with him.

-Wo to who converts a human soul to a false religion be it phariseeism Judaism or one of the Christian sects.

-Pharisees made others they converted two-fold the child of hell as they were.

-It is the form not substance with which rabinisism is concerned.

-A person can't reject the light and be saved.

#### **The Mortal Messiah by Bruce R McConkie Volume 4**

-In majestic silence Jesus listened to the charges against him and as each of their poisoned arrows hit the floor not hurting him as though they were fended off by his white shield of purity, the people began to fear, and to feel as though he were the judge and they the guilty, and as though their whole plot to kill him was about to fall apart.

-They tried to convince the Romans that Jesus was a lunatic that would lead the ignorant masses to rise against the government.

—They asked Jesus art thou the king of the Jews? He said, "I am". He was saying that he is Jehovah, the great "I AM". They knew it, and shouted that he blasphemed even then and there. At that moment the thunder bolted mightier than it did from Mt. Sinai, but they heard it not. They sought all the more to destroy him.

-Who have talents but never use those divine endowments of talents become as though they never had talents.

-Judas sold his own soul when he sold Jesus Christ.

-Satan always has an excuse for wickedness even the murder of God.

-Jews would ponder religious sayings morning midday and night seven days a week. They were familiar with the teachings of Jesus, but even the twelve Apostles needed more teaching about the Atonement which Christ gave them.

-The people Judas sold Jesus to were Satanists.

-All the evil men put aside their differences in their common hatred of Jesus Christ and worked together to plot the murder of Jesus.

-Jesus lived as a servant and was sold for the price of a slave.

-The buyers who bought Jesus from Judas used the temple money to do so, that money which was originally designed for the purchase of sacrifice for the temple.

-Satan can have no power over human souls unless they hearken to him.

-Judas became carnal sensual and devilish by choice.

-Judas is no different than the millions of sinners that went before him and the billions that came after him.

-Judas stands out for he just so happened to be doing his crimes with God, but recall all the evil are in trouble, for God says, "inasmuch as ye have done it unto one of the least of these thy brethren thou hast done it unto me."

-It is sad to contemplate how many Judases there really are among the sons of men.

-Judas may have tried to justify his evil action by reasoning that all the supposed high priests thought it ok and endorsed it.

-At the trial of Jesus, the false high priest rent his garment in anger in front of the true High Priest who stood there in majestic silence.

-Judas may have thought of how Jesus said he was going to die anyway so I may as well make some money out of it.

-The person who made the table ready for the Passover that Jesus and his Apostles used knew by some means that they wanted it.

–All accountable men can't be saved without baptism and the sacrament; it's with these things that Jesus began (with baptism) and ended (with the sacrament) his ministry.

-Today we keep the passover with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.

-Judas was more of a Pharacy than a Christian, he always sought position.

-Judas set the standard for all traitors to rally around.

–Self condemning humility is better than self gratifying pride.

–Melchizedek broke bread and blessed it prefiguring the sacrament, as did others. These were different than normal meals with prayer on the food, it was an ordinance of remembering Jesus Christ loaded with symbolism power and significance.

-Jesus condemned those who do more or less than what he instructed when it comes to the ordinance of the sacrament. Many in Christendom do more or less.

-It's as easy to believe there is a God the Son as it is to believe that there is a God the Father.

-Christ said in his father's house there are many mansions, "were it not so I would have told you." This is to say that it is obvious that there must be different rewards and punishments for those who live varying degrees of righteousness or wickedness. That is natural and reasonable, and were it otherwise, he would have told us so. (\*This is comforting doctrine.)

-The Father and the Son eat and digest food and are only in one place at a time for they have bodies (\*the influence of them is in all places though).

-The Father is manifesting himself to the world via the Son Jesus Christ, whom is totally like him. Were the Father on the earth he would say and do the EXACT same things as the Son says and does.

-We pray in the name of Christ for that is the name we took upon ourselves at baptism.

-The Holy Ghost is the Spirit of Truth, Jesus Christ is also the Spirit of Truth.

-(I see we can ever chip away at the block between you we are and who Christ The Spirit of Truth is.)

-When man has been proved throughly by the Lord and the Lord sees the man is willing to serve him at all hazards then the man will find his calling and election made sure and will be visited from time to time by Jesus Christ himself and even

he will manifest the Father unto him and the Lord will teach him face to face and will understand all the mysteries of the kingdom. This was the status of the ancients at the city of Enoch and all the members of the Church of the Firstborn.

-Only who have the Holy Ghost know the peace Jesus referred to when he said peace I give unto you not as the world giveth give I unto you.

—Heavenly Father worked out his salvation with fear and trembling so Jesus must (\*And so we are now called to and must do!)

-Heavenly Father always will be the God and Ruler of the Son (Jesus Christ). He always has more than the Son but the Son always inherits all he has.

-If love is in us, God dwells in us and his love is perfected in us (this does not mean that God physically lives in us, he can't do that since he has a body like any other person. But his influence and characteristics dwell in us in this instance.)

-Having love in us is what makes us bold at the judgement of God.

-Faith is the ultimate supreme ruling force of the universe. It governs big and small.

-The Lord reciprocates the love his children give him. Who love him get special grace, for they are on the path of becoming like him.

-The greater the obedience the greater the love.

-Heavenly Father loves The Son for he obeys him. It is the same way with us and Jesus. When we obey Jesus that is what makes Jesus love us.

-True ministers do not appoint themselves, but are appointed by Christ. This applies to Elders as well. Those who are not appointed by Christ may do preparatory work among the people, but the only people with the keys and powers to bring others to heaven, who have access to the ordinances needed to dwell with God the Father. The called are those whose fruit remains. They are the ones who if they ask anything of God it will be given them. They show they are true by their love.

-The world loves their own and hates the Saints. It can't be any other way.

-Who is loved by the world is an enemy to God.

-If Christ is persecuted surely his followers will be.

-Everywhere those who persecute the Saints are rejecting the living Christ dispute professed belief in Christ.

- Those who saw Christ and rejected him are damned because they reject the sun at noon day and choose to walk in darkness.
- The faithful raise their voices in the congregations of the wicked for they must be witnesses for God.
- Sincerity has nothing to do with salvation some are sincere about evil and even lay their lives down for it but it does them no good.
- When you get the Spirit so you say what God reveals to you your teachings will do as Christ's did they will convict the world of sin and of righteousness and of judgement.
- It is sin to reject Jesus and the message of testimony of him by his servants declaring his divinity. They will be convicted of false judgement by rejecting your testimony against the false religions of the day and choosing to follow Satan.
- The Apostles knew ten thousand times more than the Pharacies then the Apostles got the Holy Ghost and learning really went up at that point, they learn how God came to be, how creation occurs, of man's being, and of things in the ciberia heavens.
- True seekers of truth get revelation that The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints is the only true and living church on the earth and they get a witness of its doctrines.
- The Holy Ghost teaches what he has heard from The Father and The Son for he is with them and is one with them in purpose. He knows all things.
- Christ said eventually his people would not have to have him pray for them as they got the Holy Ghost so that they themselves could boldly approach the throne of grace.
- Eternal Life is the greatest gift a mortal or God could hope for. Christ prayed for it while he walked the earth, and he is a God.
- Eternal Life if to live as God and we cannot live as God unless we create as he creates, and have eternal posterity as he has, and have spirit children as he has.
- When Jesus' work in life was over he prayed to have the glory that once was his in premortality. Similarly Adam and other righteous Saints of God will get the glory they once had in premarital life as they complete their work here.
- Sinners hate the righteous because they are righteous. They love sinners.
- Leaving the world and clinging to good is the definition of overcoming the world.

-In the exact same way as how Father sent Christ, so did Christ send the Apostles. As Christ is in the Father, so are the Twelve Apostles in Christ, and the Saints are in the Twelve Apostles. Christ does as he sees the Father do. The Twelve Apostles do as they see Christ do. The Saints do as they see the Twelve Apostles do.

-The unity of the Saints, hence, is one of the greatest witnesses of Christ's divinity!

-Christ asks the Saints to reign with him for they are as he is and he is as the Father.

-The higher one stands in the hierarchy of righteousness the more his faith will be tried. Peter for example, got the most trying of the people in his day.

-Some Apostles were able to see some things that others were not able to see, this is illustrated by how only three of the Apostles went with Christ to the Mount of Transfiguration.

-At the time of Christ's death, Peter had done much, but had not yet put off the natural man and put on Christ and become submissive to God as a child is to his father.

-The Garden of Gethsemane was the Second Garden of Eden where Christ the Second Adam paid the price for Adam's acts and gained salvation.

-The Fall of Adam was essential for the salvation of man just like The Atonement of Christ. These two acts were a joint enterprise.

-Adam is likely the angel that came and comforted Christ in Gethsemane.

-Even in our purest moment we can't begin to pretend to understand the suffering of Christ.

-In Gethsemane, Christ fought a silent battle for eternity's sake.

-Let God be praised that Adam fell and that Christ ransomed us from that.

-It was probably 600 people that came to arrest Jesus at Gethsemane. It was a big task to "do away with him at last."

-The Greek text of the New Testament (the language it was originally written in) conveys that Judas not only kissed Christ but kissed him profusely to make it clear who Jesus was. This makes the betrayal all the more evil.

-Jesus asked those who came to arrest him whom they sought. They said Jesus of Nazareth. He said I am he. These men were affected by his presence in such a way that they, who fought criminals without fear, now fell to their backs with fear being in front of something so pure.



- We can hardly count the times Jesus says these rulers are hypocrites and liars only fit for the fires of Gehenna.
- After counseling with Satan whose servants they were, the people got false witnesses against Jesus for the trial. They said he said he would tear down the temple and build it again in three days, but he never claimed such. He was referring to his body not the temple of stone.
- To the false witnesses and the people who got them, the command thundering from Mount Sinai that thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor was like alien gibberish to them.
- Gospel truth is taught by testimony. The spiritually alive believe, the spiritually sick question, and the spiritually dead deny and reject.
- They asked Jesus "art thou the Christ?" He said, "I am". They knew that he was saying "I am Jehovah." They all understood this.
- Pilate always was an evil man. Only an evil man whose conscience was seared would shed the blood of an innocent man.
- Crucifixion was the worst of all deaths more so than fire.
- For many Jesus had words of teaching, for many he had words of rebuke, but for Herod the "fox" he had only silence.
- Barabas' name means 'son of the father'. He is antichrist.
- Barabas was a murderer, and by choosing him over Christ, the people became murderers.
- Christ taught the people to give to Caesar what was Caesar's, but they still accused him of rising against the government.
- Guilt yields cowardice, and cowardice weakness.
- Pilate knew Jesus was innocent of Jewish and Roman law. He tried to let him go.
- The people said Christ's blood be upon us and our children; indeed it has been, and many Jews have been crucified.
- They said we have only one king, Caesar. Indeed, and they were persecuted by that king for they forced their true king Jesus Christ to death.
- The whip had bone and lead in it. The person was often hit in the face in the whipping. At times it made the person faint, at times it made the person die.

-When the account says Judas repented it means he felt remorse but not godly sorrow. Not desire to be good, but sorrow for the consequences he must face from his evil deed.

-When great crime is committed, light is shined in the conscience making an awful glare. Hence Judas tried to change things aftermath.

-Judas did not enjoy his thirty pieces of silver he sold his soul for. This is similar to what has happened with others historically who have sold their souls to the devil.

-When Christ said, "forgive them for they know not what they do", he was referring only to the soldiers who were just doing their duty for the country by putting him on the cross.

-Jesus taught now they were now going to be saved by the temple of his body.

-Lucifer said to Jesus to cast himself down from the pinnacle of the temple, tempting him saying if you are God do this. Similarly, by the voice of Lucifer or the voice of his servants it is the same, the people jested with Christ saying if you are God cast yourself down from this cross.

-To the man on the cross when Jesus said today you shall be with me in paradise, the Joseph Smith translation says "this day you shall be with me in the world of spirits" where you can learn of me and find opportunity for progression for penitent sinners who did not have the chance to hear of the gospel in this life. How many millions have died without learning of Christ whom is the only way to salvation! This is for those who have not heard. Those who have heard have had their chance. The chance is this life.

-The three hours of darkness on the cross may have been a time where the suffering of Gethsemane intensified, occurring again but in a more profound pain.

-On the cross Jesus asked, "my God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?" God withdrew his spirit from his Son Christ so that Christ could conquer all things alone. (\*I see how it's good that Christ knows what it's like to wonder where God is in life, and he can thus relate with us perfectly!)

-At a birth, blood water and spirit is involved. This is to remind us that the same way we came into the world is the way we will need to enter the world of the Kingdom of Heaven, by blood water and spirit. By water we are baptized, by the blood of Christ we are redeemed, by the Spirit of God we are sealed to heaven. Similarly, when Christ was pierced, and blood and water came out of him, this was to remind us of the requirements of salvation, the requirements that we live the gospel of Jesus Christ.

-Jesus ministered on the cross. Once dead, he ministered in the world of Spirits.

-Those who reject the gospel in this life may inherit the terrestrial kingdom in the next life, but not the celestial highest kingdom. They had their chance for that.

-Even David of old will not remain in hell forever. (\*The author refers to how he will get a kingdom though not the celestial.)

-When Christ came to the world of Spirits in the three days of his body being in the tomb, all the righteous of the ages of the earth, all the prophets from the past in the Book of Mormon and bible etc, gathered and kneeled before him and shouted Hosannahs to him!

-In the world of Spirits we no longer grow weary or inattentive.

-The Greek text suggests that Mary may have been instructed to not hold or embrace him when he appeared to her and said "touch me not" as we see in our text. We know that Jesus let other women touch his feet from another account. Some render the translation as that Mary was already embracing Christ, and he was telling her merely to not continue to hold him. This is so because a resurrected being can't interact with a mortal in the same way a mortal can interact with a mortal.

-16 cities in the Americas were destroyed to hide their wickedness from before the face of the Lord when he visited them as a resurrected being in The Book of Mormon account.

-The most plain and simple summary of Jesus' teachings is in The Book of Mormon when Jesus teaches the people of ancient America as a resurrected being.

-Jesus has a perfected palace where he will live everlastingly (\*From what I gather this is referring to the body Jesus now possesses. A closer look at the text should make it obvious.)

-Jesus inherits worlds without end into his power.

-If Christ is divine then the only way to be saved is through him (\*for such he said).

-Proof of his divinity is the resurrection.

-Jesus' spirit went back into his body we know not how anymore than we know about how creation began or when God's came to be.

-Ministering to women is just as important as ministering to men as all are equal in the eyes of God.

-For three hours while Christ was on the cross there was earthquake and darkness.

-Jesus commended his own life, and did not linger on the cross alive as many do. This showed that he had power over his own life. No one could take it from him. He gave it up freely (\*for such was the price for salvation of mankind that had to be paid.)

-The Book of Mormon will be the means of gathering the Gentiles in the last days.

-Abrahamic Covenant is filled in Eternal Marriage.

-America with it's constitution is such for to prepare the way for the Book of Mormon; this so the Covenant of Abraham may be fulfilled.

-Who walk mournfully before the Lord will be greatly blessed more so than those who are proud.

-The Book of Mormon is the milk of the gospel; the sealed portion of the Book of Mormon which we don't have because of our unbelief is the meat of the gospel. We must receive the milk before we can handle the meat.

-Those who accept the Book of Mormon get the sealed portion thereof, those who reject the Book of Mormon do so unto their condemnation.

-After Christ for several hundred years the people of America had the sealed portion of the Book of Mormon, but it was taken from them as they fell back into wickedness.

-We are called by the name of Christ here and in the hereafter. So, we are called the family of Christ. Therein that people have revelation.

-The church of a man has no power to resurrect the body or to create Celestial realms where the exhausted may dwell. Only the Church of Christ may do that.

-Those of Paul or this or that other person receive the telestial kingdom because they rejected the true gospel and the true Church.

-Virtue shines from the faces of those the true Saints. They heal the sick and raise the dead (\*See LDS history to see of several of such accounts ie Lorenzo Snow).

-The Son did not come up with the Plan of Salvation. He carried out the Plan which his Father designed.

-Those who start on the path of salvation but don't continue thereon shall be hewn down and cast into the fire they are damned.

-Who put precedence to money before the Kingdom of God, setting aside the Kingdom for the coin, are selling the Christ for gold and loose their souls.

-All must die, man plant and animal none exempt, hence the Three Nephites and the translated beings also die, but they do not taste of death, they are immediately resurrected. All those who die with hope in Christ do not taste the sting of death like the wicked do.

-In the Millennium there will be no sorrow for there will be no death.

-No man with the spirit of God can read the Book of Mormon and not feel that it is of God.

-3 Nephi 28:10 is the last thing we have on record of Jesus teaching the Nephite people in the Book of Mormon and it is the most important doctrine ever, that those who live the gospel become as God.

-There are few people like Enoch who brake the bands and see things of eternity which we see not now.

-Those who have not learned arithmetics can scarcely understand calculus.

-Christ made himself of no reputation, but now is exhausted.

-Christ stepped down from a throne of eternal power to come to earth.

–Prophets long prayed for the restoration of the Kingdom of God. The Book of Mormon coming forth is the sign that that Kingdom is commenced again, and the gathering of people thereunto.

–The reason more people don't see God is because they don't obey the principals required therefore.

-We can be as close to Christ as John was when he leaned on the breast of Christ at Passover, and that especially so during prayer.

-Those who lay up treasures in heaven shall be able to abide the day of Christ's coming.

-Those who think all of the gospel is figurative are no different than the Saducees, they believed not angels, Christ, or in the afterlife (Christ condemned them).

-As we get a testimony of the divinity of Christ we look forward to the time of his Second Coming.

–We are in a better position to read the signs of the times than were our brethren of the time of the mortal ministry of Christ.

–Christ's greatest miracles were those of healing the spiritually wounded, of raising the spiritually dead to life.

–Receiving Christ is joining with the Saints and gathering to Israel.

-The unprepared have no promise.

-Christ chose his close friends by those who would do what he said.

-In the spirit world the ungodly did not see or hear Christ's face and voice. So shall it be at the time of the Second Coming of Christ.

—The test of mortality is to see if we will believe the truth as it is preached to us. Those who believe the truth are saved, those who believe a lie are damned.

-We must believe the things that Christ believed, such as how he was sent to us from his Father, etc. We must have no reservation about this.

—No one applies eternal truth in his life until he knows it is true.

-We can't just believe; Christ commanded all to give reason to others for the reason of the hope that is in them.

—Declare these things boldly, for they are true even as God is true.

-There has been a famine for the word of God, now not so, all may come and drink.

-The Millennial day is upon us (\*aka it is soon to come).

-The ancient powers are now restored; signs and gifts are not present as in olden times.

-Once again, the Kingdom has been set up on earth in all its beauty.

-It's ministrants of men and women go now to proclaim it as did their counterparts of old.

-We call out as if in the wilderness to the people to come and be saved. Quench the thirst of your soul.

-Our voice is one of joy gladness and melody; God has given again the fullness of the everlasting gospel, priesthood and keys, all things needed to save men.

-Our witness is that the great God has called his servant Joseph Smith Jr. to begin the truth Church of Christ in our day. Those who come to this Ensign hoisted again on the mount of Zion may gain salvation.

—How to be saved? See Joseph Smith's "Lectures on Faith". He says that where we find a saved being that person is prototype of another that could be saved. The two must be the same. Look at the saved one to see what others must be or else not be saved. The prototype is Christ. He is the standard of salvation. He is a saved being. He is saved because

he is a just and holy being, and if he were anything other than what he is he would not be saved. If it were possible for him to change from what he is it would not be possible for him to be saved. To be unlike Christ is to be destroyed. Herein hinges the door of salvation. Christ carried his cross and died, and if called upon, we must do so as well.

-Christ came once and he shall come again. We read the signs of his first coming, let us do likewise for the Second and be prepared therefore.

-When Christ comes again he will reign over those who have not been consumed by the brightness of his coming.

The Miracle of Forgiveness by Spencer W. Kimball – Book Notes move to faith bk? unfinished

In these notes, when I express my opinion or insight, I do so by the \* symbol.

\*I first read this book about 2008 and it has made a lasting impact on me by what it made me feel and what it motivated me to do.

Remember to clarify points of doctrine on any subject, go to the official Church website lds.org, or mormon.org, or the newsroom link from mormon.org which has an alphabetical index of LDS doctrine.

Also see mormonsandgays.org and “Priesthood Handbook of The Church”

No Unclean Thing Can Enter Ch2:

-A scriptural list of sins p25

These Things Doth the Lord Hate Ch4:

-“Young married couples who postpone parenthood until their degrees are attained might be shocked if their expressed preference were labeled idolatry. Their rationalization gives them degrees at the expense of children. Is it a justifiable exchange? Whom do they love and worship – themselves or God? Other couples, recognizing that life is not intended primarily for comforts, ease, and luxuries, complete their educations while they move forward with full lives, having their children and giving Church and community service.” p41

-Concerning not using tobacco, “true followers of the Master will greatly desire to please him by living this and all his commandments.” p56

## The Sin Next To Murder Ch5:

-The sin next to murder is adultery; premarital marriage. Any "crime of sexual impurity". p62

-President David O McKay said about the dangers of youth and virtue, "Your virtue is worth more than your life. Please young folk, preserve your virtue even if you lose your lives. Do not tamper with sin... do not permit yourselves to be led into temptation. Conduct yourselves seemingly and with due regard, particularly you young boys, to the sanctity of womanhood. Do not pollute it." p63

-Concerning God's law of physical intimacy, and people breaking that commandment of no sexual relations before marriage, "Many rationalize that this attraction of two unmarried people is love, and they seek thereby to justify their intimate relations. This is one of the most false of all of Satan's lies. It is lust, not love, which brings men and women to fornication and adultery. No person would injure one he truly loves, and sexual sin can only result in injury." p65

-“Our young people should know that their partners in sin will not love or respect them if they have freedom in folding their bodies. Such a practice destroys respect, not only for the other person but for self.” p66

-speaking of Joseph in Egypt, "He refused to yield to her pleadings. Her clothing, or lack of it, her perfumes, her sexy advances, her pleadings – all these bombarded a clean young man willing to suffer any penalty in order to keep his virtue."

-The harlots house is "the way to hell, going down to the chambers of death" (Prov. 7:10, 13, 16-19, 21-23, 26-27). p72

## Crime against Nature Ch6:

-“Most youth come into contact early with masturbation. Many would-be authorities declare that it is natural and acceptable, and frequently young men I interview cite these advocates to justify their practice of it. To this we must respond that the world's norms in many areas – drinking, smoking, and sex experience generally, to mention only a few – depart increasingly from God's law. The Church has a different, higher norm.” p77

-Masturbation leads to homosexuality. p78

–Homosexuality “is curable and forgivable... to those who say that this practice or any other evil is incurable, I respond ‘How can you say the door cannot be opened until your knuckles are bloody, till your head is bruised, till your muscles are sore? It can be done.’ ” p82

-Overcoming sin “involves mastering self. Plato had a word to say on this: “The first and greatest victory is to conquer yourself; to be conquered by yourself is of all things most shameful and vile.” p82-3.

-The “approach of helpfulness, not condemnation; of understanding, not accusations; of sympathy, not threats – this has brought many men to their knees in surrender and gratitude and helped them back to normality.” p84.



-“Our approach is a positive one, dwelling upon the glories of the gospel land all its blessings, the happiness of proper family life, the joy in individual cleanliness. Its success is reflected in the numerous lives blessed with complete recovery.” p84

-“The difference between the reprobate and the worthy person is generally that one yielded and the other resisted.” p86

-“when one has once put his feet on the path to recovery and mastery there must be no turning back... Yet Satan will not readily let go. Rather, he will probably send a host of new temptations to weaken the resolve of the repentant one.” p86.

-“the repenting one must avoid every person, place, thing or situation which could bring reminders of the sordid past. He must avoid pornography in any form – any stories or pictures or records which stimulate the passions. He should part company with “... the prince of this world” (the devil – John 14:30) and all such associates. He should make new friends, establish new locations and begin a totally new life.” p87

-“Many yielding to this practice are basically good people who have become trapped in sin.” p88

#### Sins of Omission Ch7:

-“Remember, the Lord loves the homosexual person as he does all of his other children. When that person repents and corrects his life, the Lord will smile and receive him.” p89

-Speaking of sins of omission, “Waste is unjustified, and especially the waste of time- limited as that commodity is in our days of probation. One must live, not only exist; he must do, not merely be; he must grow, not just vegetate.” p92

-“To be passive is deadening; to stop doing is to die. Here then is a close parallel with physical life. If one fails to eat and drink, his body becomes emaciated and dies. Likewise if he fails to nourish his spirit and mind, his spirit shrivels and his mind darkens.” p93

-Quoting Arnold Bennett: “The real tragedy is the tragedy of the man who never in his life braces himself for his one supreme effort, who never stretches to his full capacity, never stands up to his full stature.” p94

-“Not to honor these pledges (made at baptism and the sacrament), to refuse to serve or to accept responsibility and do less than one's best at it, is a sin of omission.” p95

-“Failure to act after one has made covenant to do so, the shirking of responsibility in the kingdom, brings inevitable condemnation.” p95.

-“Declining to serve when called may constitute a sin of omission as well as one of commission.” p95

-“The home teacher who is assigned the responsibility of teaching families must not fail to teach or to fulfill his assignment. The penalty is more severe than he thinks. He will be held accountable for difficult situations which arise in an assigned family and which with diligence he could have controlled.” p96

-neglecting to pay our tithing is “a transgression, not an inconsequential oversight.” it is “required of his followers.” p96

-“The Sabbath is a holy day in which to do worthy and holy things. Abstinence from work and recreation is important but insufficient. The Sabbath calls for constructive thoughts and acts, and if one merely lounges about doing nothing on the Sabbath, he is breaking it. To observe it, one will be on his knees in prayer, preparing lessons, studying the gospel, meditating, visiting the ill and distressed, sleeping, reading wholesome material, and attending all the meetings of that day to which he is expected. To fail to do these proper things is a transgression on the omission side.” p97

-speaking of a married man, “He should strive to be the perfect husband and the perfect father, and positively do all things to make his family relationships as the Lord would have them be. Similar requirements are made of the wife.” p97

-“To refuse to bear or refrain from the bearing of children is an error of omission.” p97

-“The great parental responsibility is not met unless fathers and mothers do all in their power to train their children to pray and walk uprightly before the Lord, giving proper example and positive verbal teaching.” p97

-“Any selfishness on the part of parents which would deprive the children of this training would be a sin of omission and answerable to the Great Judge when the time of judgement comes.” p98

-“To sit passively by enjoying all the benefits of the gospel and the Church and not share them with others of God’s children constitutes a serious sin of omission.” p98

-“failing to fast is a sin.” p98

-“it is not enough not to curse and blaspheme the name of Deity and think of him irreverently, ut man must call upon his name frequently in personal, family and public prayers in reverence and adoration. We should speak often of him and his program. We should read of him and his works.” p98

-“It is not sufficient that we do not kill or commit murder, but we should protect others from such crimes.” -98

-“Not only is suicide a crime, but one is obligated to protect and save and prolong his own life.” p99

-“Not only shall we not take life, but it is obligatory upon us to give life, both by bearing children into mortality and be leading people toward eternal life by teachings, proselyting and influencing them strongly toward that end.” p99

-“If is not good enough merely to refrain from injuring parents; we must honor them.” p99

“Nor is it sufficient to refrain from adultery. One must be positive and keep hands clean and heart pure and thoughts above reproach” p99.

-“Not only shall we not steal, but we shall protect others' possessions.” p99

-“Not only should we not lust for something belonging to another, but we should gladly share our possessions.” p99

-“Many and varied are the excuses for sins of omission, and they are all irrelevant.” p99

-“One (sin of omission) is the unwillingness to get involved.” p99

-Speaking of the parable of the Good Samaritan, they who passed the wounded man by, “Had he died, some of the responsibility would have been theirs. His extra suffering due to their passing him by and leaving him without succor would also be laid to their charge.” p100

-“the Church member who has the attitude of leaving it to others will have much to answer for. There are many who say: “My wife does the Church work!” Others say: “I’m just not the religious kind,” as though it does not take effort for most people to serve and do their duty. But God has endowed us with talents and time, with latent abilities and with opportunities to use and develop them in his service. He therefore expects much of us, his privileged children. The parable of the talents is a brilliant summary of the many scriptural passages outlining the promises for the diligent and penalties for the slothful. From this we see that those who refuse to use their talents in God’s cause can expect their potential to be removed and given to someone more worthy. Like the unproductive fig tree their barren lives will be cursed. To them on judgment day will come the equivalent of these devastating words from Matthew 25:26-29, 30. p100.

As a Man Thinketh Ch8:

-“A man is literally what he thinks, his character being the complete sum of all his thoughts.” p104

-“Not only does a person become what he thinks, but often he comes to look like it. If he worships the God of War, hard lines tend to develop on his countenance. If he worships the God of Lust, dissipation will mark his features. If he worships the God of Peace and Truth, serenity will crown his visage.” p104

-“How could a person possibly become what he is not thinking?” p104

-“In speaking of carving out a character President David O McKay has said: ‘Your tools are your ideals. the thought in your mind at this moment is contributing, however infinitesimally, almost imperceptibly to the shaping of your soul, even to the lineaments of your countenance... even passing and idle thoughts leave their impression. Trees that can withstand the hurricane, sometimes yield to destroying pests that can scarcely be seen except with the aid of a microscope. Likewise, the greatest foes of the individual are not always the glaring evils of humanity but subtle influences of thought and of continual association with companions.’ (\*I see that no matter what gets us down, gets us down, no matter its size, so beware.) p105

-Quoting James Allen: "A man does not come to the almshouse or the jail by the tyranny of fate or circumstance, but by the pathway of groveling thoughts and base desires. Nor does a pure-minded man fall suddenly into crime by stress of mere external force; the criminal thought had long been secretly fostered in the heart, and the hour of opportunity revealed its gathered power. Circumstance does not make the man; it reveals him to himself. No such conditions can exist as descending into vice and its attendant sufferings apart from vicious inclinations, or ascending into virtue and its pure happiness without the continued cultivation of virtuous aspirations, and man, therefore, as the lord and master of his thoughts is the maker of himself, the shaper and author of environment... let a man radically alter his thoughts and he will be astonished at the rapid transformation it will effect in the material conditions of his life. Men imagine that thought can be kept secret, but it cannot; it rapidly crystallizes into habit and habit solidifies into circumstance." p105

-“Whether you think you can or you can’t you’re right.” p105

-Allen is quoted “He who cherishes a beautiful vision, a lofty ideal in his heart, will one day realize it.” p106

-“The statement ‘As a man thinketh so is he’ could equally well be rendered ‘As a man thinketh so does he’” p106.

-“Not only acts but attitudes rest on the thoughts we feed our minds.” p106

-Quotes an unknown author, “Into the hands of every individual is given a marvelous power for good or evil – the silent, unconscious, unseen influence of his life. This is simply the constant radiation of what man really is, not what he pretends to be.... Life is a state of constant radiation and absorption; to exist is to radiate; to exist is to be the recipient of radiation. Man cannot escape for one moment from this addition of his character, this constant weakening or strengthening of others. He cannot evade the responsibility by saying it is an unconscious influence. He can select the qualities that he will permit to be radiated. He can select the calmness, trust, generosity, truth, justice, loyalty, nobility – make them vitally active in his character – and by these qualities he will constantly affect the world.” p107

-“Every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment” -Matt. 12:36-37 p. 107

-Speaking of the judgment bar of God, “At that day we may be sure that we shall receive fair judgement. The judges will have the facts as they may be played back from our own records, and our voices and the pictures of our acts and the recordings of our thoughts will testify against and for us.” p109

-Speaking of John 4:18, “The Lord knew of her adultery as he knew her whole life.” p111

-“To retaliate and fight back is human, but to accept indignities as did the Lord is divine.” p113

-“The thought that stirred the look that provoked the lust was evil in its beginning.” p113

-“To want, to desire, to crave – that is to lust.” p113

-“When the thought is born which starts a chain reaction, a sin has already been committed.” p113-114

-“If the thought is sown, then develops into lust, it is almost certain to bring eventually the full harvest of the act of the heinous sin, adultery. Note that the term lust has other connotations in addition to the sexual one.” p114

-“the time to protect against the calamity is when the thought begins to shape itself. Destroy the seed and the plant will never grow.” p114

-“Man alone, of all creatures of eat, can change his thought pattern and become the architect of his destiny.” p114

-Quoting an unknown author, “A famous artist said he would never allow himself to look at an inferior drawing or painting, to do anything low or demoralizing, lest familiarizing with it should taint his own ideal and thus be communicated to his brush.” President Kimball says “observe the same principle, lest the tainting of his ideal be communicated to his eternal should. Accordingly, let our thoughts rest upon sacred things.” p115

-“President McKay likes to quote the following: ‘Sow a thought, reap an act; sow an act, reap a habit; sow a habit, reap a character; sow a character, reap an eternal destiny.’” p115

Point of No Return Ch 9:

-“But whoso breaketh this covenant after he hath received it, and altogether turneth therefrom, shall not have forgiveness of sins in this world nor in the world to come.” Doctrine and Covenants 84:41. p117.

-“Without repentance there can be no forgiveness, and without forgiveness all the blessings of eternity hand in jeopardy.” p118

-“As the transgressor moves deeper and deeper in his sin, and the error is entrenched more deeply and the will to change is weakened, it becomes increasingly near-hopeless, and he skids down and down until either he does not want to climb back or he has lost the power to do so.” p117

-“the spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples” Helaman 4:24-25. p118

-When one has received the Holy Ghost he has a companion who will constantly warn and teach and inspire him. See Moroni 10:5.” p118

-“On the sad character of Cain [who “loved Satan more than God”], an interesting story comes to us from Lycurgus A. Wilson’s book on the life of David W. Patten. From the book I quote an extract from a letter by Abraham O. Smoot giving his recollection of David Patten’s account of meeting “a very remarkable person who had represented himself as being Cain.”;

“As I was riding along the road on my mule I suddenly noticed a very strange personage walking beside me.... His head was about even with my shoulders as I sat in my saddle. He wore no clothing, but was covered with hair. His skin was very dark. I asked him where he dwelt and he replied that he had no home, that he was a wanderer in the earth and

traveled to and fro. He said he was a very miserable creature, that he had earnestly sought death during his sojourn upon the earth, but that he could not die, and his mission was to destroy the souls of men. About the time he expressed himself thus, I rebuked him in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the virtue of the Holy Priesthood, and commanded him to go hence, and he immediately departed out of my sight..." p128 (see this page for further reference)

-“Another scriptural character responsible for murder- and this in conjunction with adultery- was the great King David. For his dreadful crime, all his life afterward he sought forgiveness. Some of the Psalms portray the anguish of his soul, yet David is still paying for his sin. He did not receive the resurrection at the time of the resurrection of Jesus Christ. Peter declared that his body was still in the tomb. (See Acts 2:29-34)” p128

-“But even David, though guilty of adultery and murder of Uriah, obtained the promise that his should not be left in hell, which means, as I understand it, that even he shall escape the second death.” (Joseph F. Smith in “Smith, Gospel Doctrine, p 434) p128

-“The prophet Joseph Smith underlined the seriousness of the sin of murder for David as for all men, and the fact that there is no forgiveness for it.

“A murderer, for instance, one that sheds innocent blood, cannot have forgiveness. David sought repentance at the hand of God carefully with tears, for the murder of Uriah; but he could only get it through hell: he got a promise that his soul should not be left in hell.

“Although David was a king, he never did obtain the spirit and power of Elijah and the fullness of the Priesthood; and the Priesthood that he received, and the throne and kingdom of David is to be taken from him and given to another by the name of David in the last days, raised up out of his lineage.” p128

-Concerning war, the First Presidency said in April 6, 1942, ““The whole world is in the midst of a war that seems the worst of all time. This Church is a worldwide Church. Its devoted members are in both camps. They are the innocent war instrumentalities of their warring sovereignties. On each side they believe they are fighting for home, and country, and freedom. On each side, our brethren pray to the same God, in the same name, for victory. Both sides cannot be wholly right; perhaps neither is without wrong.... [God] will not hold the innocent instrumentalities of the war, our brethren in arms, responsible for the conflict.” p129

A Time of Reckoning Ch20:

-“The one who delights in all of the worldly luxuries of today, at the expense of spirituality, is living but for the moment. His day is now. He will be barred from the rewards of the higher life he rejected.” p307 (\*I see people call rich living ‘the high life’ but truly it is not! The high life comes from living the gospel of Christ!)

-Even though the father forgave the prodigal son, what he wasted was gone, never to be had again. But the other son received all that his father had. p307

-The Prodigal son is forgiven, and is received back into the employ of his father, and has the love of the father. But it's the other son who gets all his father's, which is to say, eternal life. (\*I see the one is blessed to be around those people and to have his needs met, but the other has much more and a fullness of blessing and establishment forever; he attains the same status as his father. But the prodigal son, he has squandered his part. What he has lost cannot be reinstated, nor can he take from his other brother. I see we need to repent while we have the chance and qualify for eternal life now, or else we will die in sin, and only be able to inherit the status of forgiven, loved, servant in the next life.)

-Speaking of the prodigal "He "despised his birthright", and dissipated "all" of his inheritance, leaving nothing to develop and accumulate toward eternal heirship again. He had sold it for a mess of pottage as did Esau, another prodigal." p310

-“Men and women who live in mortality and who have heard the gospel here have had their day, their seventy years to put their lives in harmony, to perform the ordinances, to repent and to perfect their lives.” p314

-“relative to the inhabitants of the terrestrial world (D&C 76:73-74) were they ever to receive the celestial kingdom? They had had their opportunity; they had wasted the days of their probation; they had ignored the testimonies of the servants of God; they had followed the world and lived a worldly life.” p314.

-“Again, undoubtedly many of those people in that spirit prison, like their brothers of this generation, must have been good people in the sense of not being criminal. They must have been “honorable men of the earth.” Perhaps many of them were honest, good neighbors, good citizens, and committed no heinous crime, but were not valiant. Are not the scriptures very clear that they have lost their opportunity for exaltation? Is it not clear that it was everlastingly too late for them when they had drowned, that they had wasted their days?” p315

-“The ‘unvaliant’ Latter-day Saint will find himself there [in the terrestrial kingdom].” p315

-“And modern prophets are warning frequently and constantly that people are being destroyed by their own acts.” p316

-“It seems, for instance, that we would rather tax ourselves into slavery than pay our tithing; rather build shelters and missiles and bombs than drop to our knees with our families in solemn prayer, night and morning, to our God who would give us protection.” p317

-“He has said, ‘I will fight your battles.’ But his commitment is on condition of our faithfulness. ” p319

-“He promised to the children of Israel: ...rain in due season. The land yield her increase and trees their fruit. Granaries and barns will bulge in seed-time and harvest. Ye shall eat your bread in abundance. Ye shall dwell i your land safely and none shall make you afraid. Neither shall the sword go through your land. And five of you shall chase an hundred and an hundred of you shall put ten thousand to flight.... ” p319

-Conversely, should we not expect the same punishments if we fail to serve him? To ancient Israel these were listed... rationing and scarcity of food, and sore hunger... desolate highways... pestilence uncontrollable. Your dead bodies will be piled upon the materialistic things you sought so hard to accumulate and save...”and the sound of a shaken leaf” shall

chase you into flight, and you will flee when none pursue."... your cities will be shambles; your churches in ruins. Your enemies will be astonished at the barrenness, sterility, desolation of the land they had been told was so choice, so beautiful, so fruitful. Then shall the land enjoy her Sabbaths under compulsion... Your people will be scattered among the nations as slaves and bondsmen. You will pay tribute and bondage, and fetters shall bind you." p320-321

-“There is only one cure for the earth's sick condition. That infallible cure is simply righteousness, obedience, godliness, honor, integrity. Nothing else will suffice.

-“To the unrighteous nation there comes a day of reckoning. To each individual... At that point the books will be finally balanced, all accounts due will have to be paid, all debts satisfied. Fortunately we have time to pay off our debts before that awesome day of judgement arrives. By repenting now, in this life, and living a life of righteousness thereafter, we can appear before God clean and holy.

## Regent

This is a ruler with the king's seal, to act in all things as the king in the king's absence.

He is lord of all things open and secret, general and absolute.

## Jesus' Youth etc.

Shared by Robert Hawthorne Sr.

They always portrayed Jesus that way probably wearing sandals and pounding Nails in the little stools. Truth is he was a high priest of the Essen order. They were Artisans and metallurgist. He also from the time he was twelve until he was of the age to return at 30 he traveled the world with his uncle Joseph of Arimathea who was the third richest man in Rome and supplied all of the metal to the Roman army for the swords and shields and breastplates that they made the swords for that which killed all the Christians. He was the third richest man in Rome



## AFTER LIFE & RESURRECTION

The Better World We've Been Hoping For  
Onward to eternal perfection.



## Resurrection Meme by Mormonr.org



Life Everlasting by Duane S Crowther – Book Preview -pending

Published by Bookcraft SLC Utah, 1967

Many accounts from many people are given in the text, I will focus these notes on words or prophets, as those are usually the more reliable or well documented accounts. It is also more common for those to stay within the doctrines of eternity revealed in the standard works of scripture, though we know the standard works aren't an end all account, but that they can and should be added to when the Lord reveals more information to us as he sees fit, based on our readiness to receive.

-Joseph Smith: it is very important to learn what God has revealed about death and passing into the next life. Study this topic 'day and night.'

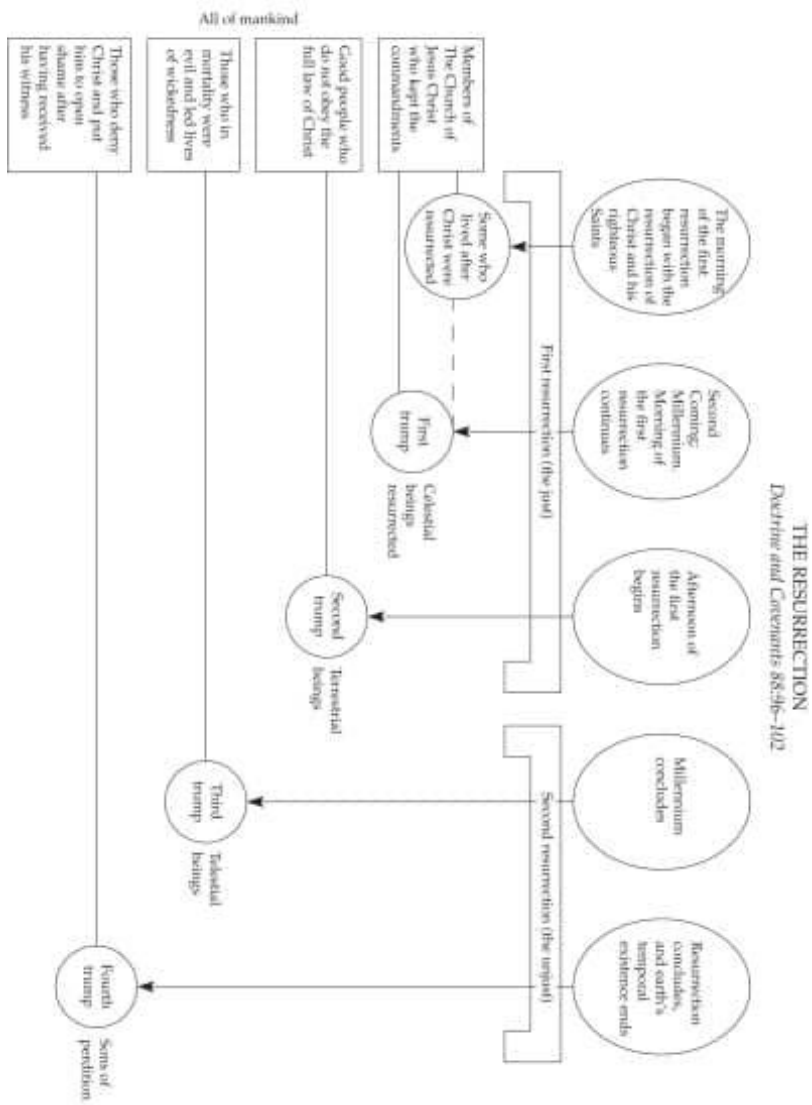
-Joseph Smith: looking into heaven 5 minutes you'd know more about it than all the books written on the subject. Information on this topic can be known by revelation.

-Joseph Smith: seek deeper and deeper into the mysteries of godliness.

-Joseph Smith: know how to come to God, and he will unfold the heavens to you and tell you all about it.

-John 5:24: death can be a journey to life if we follow Christ

## [Resurrection Chart from Doctrines of the Gospel Manual Ch. 32](#)



## Are There Perpetual Chances For Exaltation After This Life? NO

D&C 76:112 And they shall be servants of the Most High; but where God and Christ dwell they cannot come, worlds without end.  
113 This is the end of the vision which we saw, which we were commanded to write while we were yet in the Spirit.

D&C 29:27 And the righteous shall be gathered on my right hand unto eternal life; and the wicked on my left hand will I be ashamed to own before the Father;

28 Wherefore I will say unto them—Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels.

29 And now, behold, I say unto you, never at any time have I declared from mine own mouth that they should return, for where I am they cannot come, for they have no power.

Yes there are teachings of church leaders which suggest the contrary, but we dismiss them due to not aligning with scripture.

## Delicate Friendships to Be Restored

Do we always love those we once loved? Are friends so easily lost? It seems so, though we know we must move on with reality. But we hope that in the next life we can be friends. May heaven restore the delicate things which could not remain in this fallen land. May we learn one by one to love all people as we love ourselves. May we view one another in positive light, giving the benefit of the doubt, for once we saw each other as equals and had great joy with one another.

## The Millennium & Heaven: Eternal Sunday? Boring?

One friend mentioned that she might not be so interested in heaven if it's just harps and clouds all the time, Sunday on repeat forever. This friend specifically asked about pets and eating in heaven among other things. Here is my response:

Lol. All I can say is study the teachings of Joseph Smith all you can. Look up Truman G Madsen lectures on Joseph.

Heaven is a lot of work and that scares people. Brigham Young said if the streets in heaven are paved good, it was the saints who paved them.

There's also eternal parenting (can you count the stars?) and creating worlds out of broken down unorganized matter.

Imagine having mastery of every science and knowing all history and psychology to the point that you can with confidence predict the future of individuals and societies. Imagine having command of every musical instrument.

Imagine knowing all people, their names, their stories, and earning their friendship, and helping them progress to greater levels of joy until they have a fullness.

Here is the deal: there is no such thing as permanent Sunday. Sunday is when we reorient ourselves to the cosmos, to the more real eternal world. It is a day God rested from his labors. What's the point of permanent rest? There is none. Not even for God. He rests one in 7, not 7 in 7.

The notion that heaven is a boring place of singing dull hymns with uninterested neighbors is a lie of Satan.

Eating? Jesus ate fish with his apostles after he was resurrected. Perhaps you eat depending on what company you're in, whether you're helping mortals that day or planning with fellow gods that day.

Pets? Joseph Smith said the animals in the book of Revelation are both literal and figurative. Hugh Nibley says, drawing upon info from ancient documents, and ideas from evolutionary biology seen on this planet, not to mention animals evolving on other planets, that there are countless types of animals in heaven, such that we can't even imagine all that we will see there.

Heaven is a real place. It is a series of planets crowned with glory (intelligence, light, and truth). In the system of planets we belong to (MWG likely), the heaven planets are those located near planet Kolob. Further, there are telestial (like our earth), terrestrial, and celestial planets.

The residents of those planets have powerful bodies, to the degree of glory they attain. The highest glory includes the bodily privilege of procreation, a divine power which we now have some access to test us (here is divine power, will they handle it?). Brigham Young said every person (men and woman) who reaches the 'unspeakable attainment' of exaltation in a celestial world, will be made as beautiful as the angels (male and female) that surround the throne of God.

We could go on and on, but suffice it to say that the new testament passage put it well when it said we can't even begin to imagine how awesome heaven will be.

Also, read life everlasting by Duane Crowther.

Here is the first of a lecture series by Truman g Madsen which will help shed light on the subject further: [Click here](#)

## Why Aren't We "Raptured" Upon Conversion?

I heard a radio preacher this morning say this, and I'll tell you why he is wrong:

"we live in the world, as Jesus said we would. Why doesn't got rapture us as soon as we are converted? Why isn't it that when we say, "I am a sinner, Jesus Christ, I commit myself to you." that we aren't raptured up to heaven immediately? It's because God is keeping us here to reach out to others."

THAT'S WHAT THE PREACHER SAID. NOW I'LL TELL YOU THE CORRECT ANSWER.

God is keeping us here because WE'RE NOT DONE BEING TESTED, not because all there is left to do is to worry about other people. No, the quest for your soul is not over when you say, "Jesus is my Savior!" The scripture says, 'not everyone who says Lord Lord will enter into the kingdom'. It takes a lifetime of WORK to get full access to the GRACE. The sooner you repent, the better. Then keep repenting. Joseph Smith said he was like a rough stone rolling down a hill, getting rough edges knocked off as he goes, becoming a polished shaft for the quiver of the Lord. This preachers message deleted the need for repentance, and thus undermined the sacred gospel of Jesus Christ, bringing it down to the level of a mere game.

## Longing to Belong by Bruce Hafen – Lecture Highlights

This complete discourse is found in the book "The Belonging Hearth: The Atonement and Relationships with God and Family" by Bruce Hafen, Ch. 1: The Longing to Belong

ing for home. And when we have paid the price of patient preparation, self-discipline, and an irrevocable commitment to another person's happiness, we can taste the sweet joy of authentic human love. The gospel's assurance that we can be encircled about *eternally* in the arms of this romantic love promises to fulfill our deepest longing for security and belonging—hopes expressed in the poetry and song of all our history.

---  
The eternal emptiness of choosing through disobedience to fill no family chairs at all is captured in these sobering words: "Thy sons and thy daughters shall be given unto another people, and thine eyes shall look and fail with longing for them all the day long; and there shall be no might in thine hand." (Deuteronomy 28:32.)  
---

If the ultimate deprivation is a total severance from the Lord's Spirit, leaving us *alone* from him in spiritual darkness, the ultimate joy may be the blessing of being *with him*, totally filled with that Spirit. Then "there shall be no darkness in" us, for if our eye is single to his glory, our "whole bodies shall be filled with light" (D&C 88:67), a light that "groweth brighter and brighter until the perfect day" (D&C 50:24). That

---  
cumstances, a family in Eastern Europe listened to the message of Latter-day Saint missionaries. They read the Book of Mormon, took to heart its message of hope, and joined the Church. Some time later, a friend asked the father, "Well, now that you have become a Mormon, what has changed most in your life?" The man could have described his initial sense of loss in giving up coffee and cigarettes. He might have compared how differently he spent his Sundays than he did before. But instead, the father replied thoughtfully, "What has changed most is the increased sense of love we all feel for one another in our family."<sup>25</sup>

---  
are what he or she most desires. But the Lord's prophets have assured us that eternal marriage awaits the faithful ones who did not choose their singlehood: "On occasions when you ache for that acceptance and affection which belong to family life on earth, please know that our Father in Heaven is aware of your anguish, and that one day he will bless you beyond your capacity to express."<sup>27</sup>

---  
One of the most provocative, even if speculative, explanations of our desire for closeness to others is illustrated by the work of anthropologist Joseph Campbell and psychologist Carl Jung. Campbell and Jung have each identified a kind of "collective memory" of the human race within each person, which they believe explains why so many people, across all times and cultures, share common moral codes, common religious and mythical imagery, and common personal aspirations.<sup>15</sup>

This collective consciousness may originate in our biological make-up, which carries a human memory bank that could explain some of our attraction toward immediate ancestors and descendants, those who most closely share our gene pool. Modern science, which is exploding with new understanding of our genetic coding, seems to support such assumptions. Recent discoveries suggest that the DNA within each of our body cells may predispose us to exhibit certain tendencies transmitted to us by our parents and grandparents. These discoveries confirm how each human being is a



with God. A 1983 survey reported in a prominent Catholic publication revealed that many American Catholics "want to 'hug God' when they arrive in heaven." McDannell and Lang note that this response echoes "the hopes of earlier generations; God will be a personal character willing to be hugged, individuals will retain their personalities, families will reunite, and earthly activities will continue."<sup>8</sup>

---  
for us. As John Donne wrote four centuries ago:

All mankind is of one author, and is one volume;  
when one man dies, one chapter is not torn out of  
the book, but translated into a better language; . . .  
God's hand is in every translation, and his hand shall  
bind up all our scattered leaves again. . . . No man  
is an island entire of itself; every man is a piece of  
the continent, a part of the main. If a clod be washed  
away by the sea, Europe is the less, as well as if a  
promontory were, as well as if a manor of thy  
friend's or of thine own were. Any man's death  
diminishes me, because I am involved in mankind,  
and therefore never send to know for whom the bell  
tolls; it tolls for thee.<sup>9</sup>

---  
Wickedness is Happiness, Sometimes? The Justice of God and the Nature of the Soul

Mormon 2:13 shows that people have some amount of happiness in sin, but that God doesn't allow that to continue. God doesn't "suffer" them to do that always. Indeed, when people sin, it makes God suffer! The word used in the text is suffer. We reconcile this passage with the passage of Alma 41:10 that "wickedness never was happiness" in that the deceptive "joy" we feel when we sin is like the magician pulling the rabbit out of the hat; it's not real, and not substantive, and won't work when you need it the most. It's a mere trick, and won't meet the deep human needs we all have. It's like a diet of pure ice cream, it seems alright at first, but you soon find it only leaves you ill and without energy; your quality of life has greatly diminished overall; you forgot the joy you once had, and consider this the new normal, and are puzzled at the joy others have whom are living Gods commandments. You don't remember that keeping Gods commandments is the source of joy, so you don't believe or understand the people of God when they claim that God has given them their happiness. We aren't talking about the fake people of God, we are talking about the real people of God whom spend 20 hours of serving the poor for everyone hour reading scriptures. Not the hypocrites, but the true followers of Jesus. These true followers of Jesus are whom you see as having the deepest joy; nothing can conquer it though they pass through hell itself for the sake of righteousness, for the sake of the unending blessings it will pour out on the heads of the people of the earth. They are the saviors of men, and will appear as the Lord at the time of the Coming of the Lord. There is no real solution for world peace outside of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ isn't a mere teacher, he is God. He didn't just have good ideas, he had power to raise the dead. He didn't just give His life for us, he was risen from the dead, and lives today. He didn't just forgive the sinner in His day, he will also judge all mankind at the last day. He will determine whether our works have been good or evil, or somewhere in between, and assign us to a place in His kingdom where we can stand the most blessings. The righteous are more able to receive blessings, so they will be blessed more. The wicked cannot live the law of heaven, so they cannot abide in the highest heaven. They may abide in a lower heaven whose law they agree to abide, but they can never enter the highest heaven without surrendering to the laws of the highest heaven. This includes obedience to God even when we don't understand all the reasons why God is asking us to do a certain thing. Behold the



power of God, see it in the history of earth as recorded in the bible and book of Mormon, and see it manifest in The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Read the book of Mormon, and pray to know if it is not true. Live the teachings of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints and see if your life doesn't improve for the better. Stop using liquors and harmful drugs, stop being sexually promiscuous, stop keeping all your money for yourself, stop avoiding marriage and childbearing, start praying to the Father in the name of the Son Jesus Christ, start worshipping with the Saints of God, start confessing your crimes and misdeeds to those offended, start becoming financially independent, start taking good care of your body, start worshipping God in his temples as erected by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Start turning your heart to your fathers by researching whom your ancestors are and being baptized proxy for them in the temples, so they too may have the blessings of salvation, for truly, baptism is the gate one must enter into Gods kingdom by. Why? Because God said so. Avoid baptism and you'll never enter into the highest heaven, no, not ever! Baptism is the way we say "ok God, this is your kingdom, I'll do whatever you ask. Want me to balance a rubber duckie on my head while I cook breakfast? Ok. This isn't my program, it's yours, and I'm just glad to be here." Of course Gods symbols (baptism, temple ritual, etc.) are meaningful and not a vain thing like the duck on the head, but the point is that even if we don't understand his symbols yet, that doesn't mean we need to run away. Baptism is to represent a person being laid in a tomb, then rising out of that tomb. Why? because the central thing about Christ is that he will raise your body out of its tomb. Dead is a very short stop on the train of life. Without God and Christ whom is the messenger of God, life is a Shakespearean tragedy. There is no hope, for death comes, and ends our lot, be it sad or glad. But with Christ, we hope to rise from the dead, and know that all will rise from the dead. With Christ, we have hope, and can deal with the tragedy, knowing that this life is the temporary part, and that the greater is to come. Oh friends, believe in God! Try to believe! Try to obey! Gods blessings aren't just for those who are good, but for those who try to be good! For those who are obeying him, and those who try to obey him! Like a parent helping a child to walk, God will help you obey his commandments if you try! What, you've stumbled before? Don't give up! It's not over till it's over! Feel my love for you, and hear my witness as your friend that Christ lives, and has the power to save you! Finally, hear my witness that the power of Jesus Christ is found in The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, and more knowledge of his kingdom is found there than anywhere on earth! Truths long lost have finally returned and are found in this church, praise the Lord! Come, feast on the words of Christ, which are in more abundance in The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints than anywhere on earth! Want to know what happened to Gandhi? Celestial kingdom of God (the highest heaven). But he had no baptism! God's got that taken care of via proxy baptisms; the dead live on as spirits, and await the return of their bodies made alive again, and while they wait, they are taught of the fullness of truth, which is that Jesus Christ is the Lord God whom created the earth, and that his are the ways of life. The spirit candidate (the dead person) may then praise Jesus Christ and accept baptism, for he had no chance to receive it in life! He had no understanding of it either! So God is kind, and works these things out. He doesn't say "oh you didn't hear / didn't understand? Too bad!" No, this is not the Lord of the universe. The Lord of the universe is a just ruler, who takes everything into account when he makes his judgments, and he is a merciful judge! Do you have more questions about the operation of the universe, and the kingdom of God which organizes it? Of course you do! Talk to me, talk to someone whom has been acquainted with these things, be bold in your seeking! You may or may not be seeking God and Christ, but they are seeking you. They are relentless, and you'll hear from them time and again. They aren't going away, and they have sent prophets once again, like Joseph Smith, to whom they appeared in person, and have sent many more scriptures to. The days of Peter and Paul of the New Testament are upon us again, we now again have witnesses whom have seen the face of God, and whom have his power! Did Christ raise the dead? Yes. So do they whom have his authority. Joseph Smith raised someone from the dead. Prophets since Joseph Smith have raised people from the dead. Has anyone ever raised someone from the dead without the authority from the hand of Jesus Christ? No, not ever! Jesus Christ put his hand on the head of Peter. Then Peter appeared to Joseph Smith in about 1830 and put his hand on Joseph Smith. Joseph Smith passed it on to Brigham Young (these men aren't perfect, only Jesus is perfect, but you would be hard pressed to find better men on earth than Joseph Smith and Brigham Young), and the authority has been passed on by hand to the current prophet Thomas S. Monson. By this direct transferal of power, The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints claims the direct authority of God. The prophet Monson receives revelations about what the Church and the world need to do to be saved. Have you heard what he has to say? Oh you really should try it! Aren't you a little curious? Don't you want to at least know, even if you don't believe? Then after you know what he says, don't you want to believe? You must pray to God for this answer. Then will come the most powerful witness you've ever experienced in your life. So fellow wanderer, come, come and see what I have found!

## [Point-Blank Accountability](#)

Here we argue that our character is our fault, regardless of external forces and situations we're placed into in life, leaving us before God in a state of point-blank accountability. We will also consider how Christ is merciful and takes into account our circumstances, though we do not excuse ourselves.

-2 Ne. 28:23 this verse shows that those who allowed themselves to get ensnared with the chains of Satan will eventually have to stand before God and confess this truth: that ultimately, what they got into was their own fault. Wow!

-You see, we must use the grace of God to help us stop sinning. If we die in deep sin, it means we have not accessed the grace of God. Ecclesiastes says you can turn your life around before you die and it will be well with you, but if you don't, toast!

-Yes there is help in the spirit world for who had not opportunity in this life, and even opportunities for people who lived in sin to get

some blessings in the hereafter (but not full exaltation blessings), (and we can't judge well about who meets what qualifications), but we recognize this: This life is the time to repent and prepare to meet God (Alma 34:32, 34 etc.).

-Though our works are "filthy rags" compared to the goodness of God, our salvation will yet hinge upon these two things: Us doing all we can (2 Ne. 25:23), and having God help us (2 Ne. 25:23). We need to offer those filthy rags as a sacrifice to God. If we do nothing, it's like trampling the Holy One of Israel under foot (3 Ne. 28:35), which is much worse than a meager offering, however filthy those rags may be.

-“Death does not change our personality or our desires for good or evil. Those who chose to obey God in this life live in a state of happiness, peace, and rest from troubles and care. Those who chose not to obey in this life and did not repent live in a state of unhappiness.” (Preach My Gospel 2004, pp. 52).

-“Sin consists in doing wrong when we know and can do better, and it will be punished with a just retribution, in the due time of the Lord.” (Brigham Young, DBY, 156; Teachings of BY Manual: <https://www.lds.org/manual/teachings-brigham-young/chapter-9?lang=eng> ).

-“Though we may do the best we know how at this time, can there be no improvement made in our lives? There can. If we do wrong ignorantly, when we learn it is wrong, then it is our duty to refrain from that wrong immediately and for ever.” (Brigham Young, DBY, 156; Teachings of BY Manual: <https://www.lds.org/manual/teachings-brigham-young/chapter-9?lang=eng>)

-Naturally, God will take into account all things. Marilyn Monroe had a different name as a child. She was abused severely by her mother, including being locked and transported in a suitcase, many terrible things. One day someone with a camera told her she looks good in pictures. Finally there was a place where she felt worthwhile. She became a sex figure in society. It seems that God will have mercy on this soul. The family proclamation issued by the LDS church in 1995 states that children are “entitled” to parents who love and care for them. So it seems that a child without that privilege he/she was entitled to have as a human being will have a significant amount of mercy in their case before God. This being said, she was an adult making choices and will have some level of accountability, but this early terrific trauma certainly had lifelong results which were serious and not her fault. Christ's atonement (sacrifice) on behalf of the rest of the human race is called “infinite” in the scriptures. This doesn't mean anything goes, but it does mean we have cause to praise His name forever!

## Literal (Corporal) Resurrection of Christ & All



For another critical aspect of understanding this topic, study the doctrine of premortality as taught by the prophets, which can be found elsewhere in this book. You must understand that we lived before earth, and a key purpose in coming to earth was to get a body, one like our Father in Heaven's body. Even Jesus Christ had to come to earth to get a body, so he could complete his training to become like Heavenly Father. Jesus Christ is the prototype of how to become like Heavenly Father. Heavenly Father is the exalted man. He was a spirit, then he was born on an earth to get his body, now he exists with that body, resurrected from the dead, to never die again, enjoying his perfected body forever. Jesus Christ now has his resurrected body also. After 3 days in the tomb, he was risen. This is a key doctrine of Christianity, and the great secret of the universe: That the human race are destined to become Gods, and that Gods are created out of humans, particularly humans who express interest in becoming like God, and agree to do so in the only way possible, namely keeping the commandments of God, the same terms by which God himself became God. Lucifer is an interesting case study – he fell because he wanted to become a God, but wasn't willing to do it in the natural process of living a life of devotion to God and kindness to his fellow men. Lucifer wanted to dethrone Heavenly Father and take his place. As we see, Lucifer not only lost his opportunity to become a God from his rebellion, but also lost his opportunity to even get a body. Prophets have revealed that the great punishment to Lucifer is the fact that he doesn't have nor ever will have a body. Prophets have also taught that spirits with bodies have more power than spirits without bodies. This means we have more power than Lucifer. Jesus Christ was resurrected, and so will we be. Even the wicked on this earth will be resurrected, but their resurrection will not be as glorious as the resurrection of those who are valiant in this life. In the premortal world, those who chose to follow Heavenly Father's plan, including the centerpiece of that plan

being redemption through faith in Jesus Christ, were given the opportunity to come to earth and obtain bodies. The gift of bodies is a permanent gift. We've already earned it, and nothing we do in this life could revoke that. Getting bodies is eternally wonderful, but we must follow God if we hope to become like our Father in Heaven. As his children, it is our truest destiny to become like him, and join in the 'family business' of having an endless posterity, and creating worlds on which those posterity may dwell in their journey to joining us and Father in Heaven as the Gods of the universe. Heavenly Father, as an exalted being, has the key privilege of, by the power of his body and the power of his priesthood, having an endless posterity. The doctrine that we can become like our father in heaven is logical and glorious. This is why we shout praises to God! He doesn't just want us to be, as Elder Renlund said, nice house pets who don't get his celestial living room carpet dirty, no, he wants us to become as he is! His key title is "Father". How can we be fathers without bodies? It can't be done. Praise God for the gift and joy of bodies, and oh how we strive to be worthy of a celestial resurrection, where the body will become more glorious than we can comprehend! The attainment of utmost beauty, the absence of disease and exhaustion, these unimaginable gifts are only the beginning! Other interesting reading on this topic are my essay "Objective Beauty" and my essay "Prophets Teach About Beauty", which can be found in my book on family.

-One must understand what is an angel, what is a human, what is a God. They are all human, but in different stages of progression.

stage 1 of human: angel without body (not yet come to earth to get a body)

stage 2 of human: mortal being with a body on earth (being tested to see if will advance higher by passing the test of faith)

stage 3 of human: angel without a body (came to earth for a body and died, and now awaits the resurrection)

stage 4 of human: angel with a body (the body was dead but is now resurrected to forever remain alive, for "in Christ are all made alive")

stage 5 of human: God (the resurrected (re-embodied) angel has reached perfection)

Note: the term "angel" is not really an essential term in this context; the angel is not a different breed from the human or the God; they are all the same breed, it's us. The main thing to pay attention to is that our stages of progression are defined by whether or not our spirits are clothed in bodies. Angel comes from Hebrew *malak* and Greek *angelos*, both merely meaning "messenger." In that sense of the word, a human mortal on God's errand can be termed an angel as well.

Note: Nephilim or giants or "The Watchers" are not strange supernatural creatures, but all fit into the above stages of regular human existence. For a discussion further detailing this point, see document "The Watchers Nephilim Supernatural Theory Exposed as False Doctrine -by Nate Richardson, 5-1917" at this link: <https://richardsonstudies.wordpress.com/2017/05/19/the-watchers-nephilim-supernatural-theory-exposed-as-false-doctrine-by-nate-richardson-5-1917/>

Note: these human stages in no way justify the false doctrine of reincarnation. The essence of a human remains forever, as well does their memory. Mortal humans don't remember the life prior to earth because of a veil drawn over the mind by God. This veil will be removed in the resurrection of the dead, and all will remember all 3 parts of the play: pre-mortality, mortality, and post-mortality. (mortality meaning life on this earth as we now live from birth to death. The human soul has existed from the beginning, and will continue to exist indefinitely. For further detailed explanation of this point, see document "Humankind living before earth (have no beginning have no end), Literal Resurrection, Eternal Family: An 18 Point Response to a non-LDS Christian: by Nate Richardson approx. April 2017" at this link: <https://richardsonstudies.wordpress.com/2017/05/15/humankind-living-before-earth-have-no-beginning-have-no-end-literal-resurrection-eternal-family-an-18-point-response-to-a-non-lds-christian-by-nate-richardson-approx-april-2017/>

-Alma 40:22-26: "22 Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets. 23 The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.

24 And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets—

25 And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.

26 But behold, an awful death cometh upon the wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out, and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works, which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup."

-D&C 129: 4-5, 7-8: "4 When a messenger comes saying he has a message from God, offer him your hand and request him to shake hands with you.

5 If he be an angel he will do so, and you will feel his hand.

7 Ask him to shake hands with you, but he will not move, because it is contrary to the order of heaven for a just man to deceive; but he will still deliver his message.

8 If it be the devil as an angel of light, when you ask him to shake hands he will offer you his hand, and you will not feel anything; you may therefore detect him.

— 1 Cor. 15:50 says no flesh can inherit the kingdom of God, and this is true. Resurrected bodies don't have blood, rather spirit flows through their veins of flesh. The flesh is enhanced from its current earthy state to a celestial state. It is still tangible and embodies the spirit like our mortal bodies now, but it is inexhaustible. Before the Fall, Adam and Eve had no blood in their veins, they had spirit in the veins. Blood entered their bodies when the fall occurred. The fall is when they became mortal. The reason the Old Testament law forbade the eating of blood was because the blood is the life of a thing (Lev. 7:10-14).

Hear Brigham Young on this: "The blood he spilled upon Mount Calvary he did not receive again into his veins. That was poured out, and when he was resurrected, another element took the place of the blood. It will be so with every person who receives a resurrection; the blood will not be resurrected with the body, being designed only to sustain the life of the present organization. When that is dissolved, and we again obtain our bodies by the power of the resurrection, that which we now call the life of the body, and which is

formed from the food we eat and the water we drink will be supplanted by another element; for flesh and blood cannot inherit the Kingdom of God [see 1 Corinthians 15:50] (Discourses of Brigham Young, 374).” (<https://www.lds.org/manual/teachings-brigham-young/chapter-37?lang=eng> ; from Teachings of the Presidents of the Church: Brigham Young: Ch 37, Understanding Death and Resurrection)

– “We came to this earth that we might have a body and present it pure before God in the celestial kingdom. The great principle of happiness consists in having a body. The devil has no body, and herein is his punishment. He is pleased when he can obtain the tabernacle of man, and when cast out by the Savior he asked to go into the herd of swine, showing that he would prefer a swine’s body to having none. All beings who have bodies have power over those who have not.” (Joseph Smith, Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith, Ch17 [https://www.lds.org/manual/teachings-joseph-smith/chapter-17?lang=eng#12-36481\\_000\\_021](https://www.lds.org/manual/teachings-joseph-smith/chapter-17?lang=eng#12-36481_000_021) ; Quoted by William Clayton, reporting an undated discourse given by Joseph Smith in Nauvoo, Illinois; in L. John Nuttall, “Extracts from William Clayton’s Private Book,” pp. 7–8, Journals of L. John Nuttall, 1857–1904, L. Tom Perry Special Collections, Brigham Young University, Provo, Utah; copy in Church Archives.)

-2 Nephi 9:5-22: “5 Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.

6 For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

7 Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.

8 O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

9 And our spirits must have become like unto him, and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

10 O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

11 And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

12 And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

13 O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh, save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect.

14 Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, and our uncleanness, and our nakedness; and the righteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, being clothed with purity, yea, even with the robe of righteousness.

15 And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to the holy judgment of God.

16 And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire, prepared for them; and their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever and has no end.

17 O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled.

18 But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

19 O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death, and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

20 O how great the holiness of our God! For he knoweth all things, and there is not anything save he knows it.

21 And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men, yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam.

22 And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.

”

-1 Cor. 15:16-24: “16 For if the dead rise not, then is not Christ raised:  
 17 And if Christ be not raised, your faith is vain; ye are yet in your sins.  
 18 Then they also which are fallen asleep in Christ are perished.  
 19 If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men most miserable.  
 20 But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept.  
 21 For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead.  
 22 For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.  
 23 But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ’s at his coming.  
 24 Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power.”

-1 Cor. 15:29: “Else what shall they do which are abaptized bfor the dead, if the dead crise not at all? why are they then baptized for the ddead?”

-Luke 24:46-33: “36 ¶ And as they thus spake, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you.

37 But they were terrified and affrighted, and supposed that they had seen a spirit.

38 And he said unto them, Why are ye troubled? and why do thoughts arise in your hearts?

39 Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me, and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have.

40 And when he had thus spoken, he shewed them his hands and his feet.

41 And while they yet believed not for joy, and wondered, he said unto them, Have ye here any meat?

42 And they gave him a piece of a broiled fish, and of an honeycomb.

43 And he took it, and did eat before them.”

-Job 19:26 “And though after my skin worms destroy this abody, yet in my bflesh shall I csee God”

-Moses 5:10 “And in that day Adam blessed God and was afilled, and began to bprophecy concerning all the families of the earth, saying: Blessed be the name of God, for because of my ctransgression my deyes are opened, and in this life I shall have ejoy, and again in the fflesh I shall see God.”

-What if a body is burned to ashes or shredded in the sea? It all comes back together in the resurrection by the power of God recombining those elements. Hear Brigham Young: “After the spirit leaves the body, it remains without a tabernacle in the spirit world until the Lord, by his law that he has ordained, brings to pass the resurrection of the dead [see D&C 93:33–34]. When the angel who holds the keys of the resurrection shall sound his trumpet, then the peculiar fundamental particles that organized our bodies here, if we do honor to them, though they be deposited in the depths of the sea, and though one particle is in the north, another in the south, another in the east, and another in the west, will be brought together again in the twinkling of an eye, and our spirits will take possession of them. We shall then be prepared to dwell with the Father and the Son, and we never can be prepared to dwell with them until then. Spirits, when they leave their bodies, do not dwell with the Father and the Son, but live in the Spirit world, where there are places prepared for them. Those who do honor to their tabernacles, and love and believe in the Lord Jesus Christ, must put off this mortality, or they cannot put on immortality. This body must be changed, else it cannot be prepared to dwell in the glory of the Father” (Discourses of Brigham Young, 372, see Teachings of the Presidents of the Church: Brigham Young, at <https://www.lds.org/manual/teachings-brigham-young/chapter-37?lang=eng>).

Further, hear Brigham Young again: “We are here in circumstances to bury our dead according to the order of the Priesthood. But some of our brethren die upon the ocean; they cannot be buried in a burying ground, but they are sewed up in canvas and cast into the sea, and perhaps in two minutes after they are in the bowels of the shark, yet those persons will come forth in the resurrection, and receive all the glory of which they are worthy, and be clothed upon with all the beauty of resurrected Saints, as much so as if they had been laid away in a gold or silver coffin, and in a place expressly for burying the dead” (DBY, 373–74)

-“...The spirit [of a righteous man or woman] has overcome the body, and the body is made subject in every respect to that divine principle God has planted in the person. The spirit within is pure and holy, and goes back pure and holy to God, dwells in the spirit world pure and holy, and, by and by, will have the privilege of coming and taking the body again. [Jesus Christ,] holding the keys of the resurrection, having previously passed through that ordeal, will be delegated to resurrect our bodies, and our spirits will be there and prepared to enter into [our] bodies. Then, when we are prepared to receive our bodies, they are the first earthly objects that bear divinity personified in the capacity of the man...” (Discourses of Brigham Young, 373; see Teachings of the Presidents of the Church: Brigham Young, at <https://www.lds.org/manual/teachings-brigham-young/chapter-37?lang=eng>)

– “No man can enter the celestial kingdom and be crowned with a celestial glory, until he gets his resurrected body” (DBY, 375).

-“The only true riches in existence are for you and me to secure for ourselves a holy resurrection” (DBY, 372).

– “12 And there were gathered together in one place an innumerable company of the spirits of the just, who had been faithful in the testimony of Jesus while they lived in mortality; 13 And who had offered sacrifice in the similitude of the great sacrifice of the Son of God, and had suffered tribulation in their Redeemer’s name. 14 All these had departed the mortal life, firm in the hope of a glorious resurrection, through the grace of God the Father and his Only Begotten Son, Jesus Christ. 15 I beheld that they were filled with joy and gladness, and were rejoicing together because the day of their deliverance was at hand. 16 They were assembled awaiting the advent of the Son of God into the spirit world, to declare their redemption from the bands of death.

17 Their sleeping dust was to be restored unto its perfect frame, bone to his bone, and the sinews and the flesh upon them, the spirit and the body to be united never again to be divided, that they might receive a fulness of joy.

18 While this vast multitude waited and conversed, rejoicing in the hour of their deliverance from the chains of death, the Son of God appeared, declaring liberty to the captives who had been faithful; 19 And there he preached to them the everlasting gospel, the

doctrine of the resurrection and the redemption of mankind from the fall, and from individual sins on conditions of repentance.” (D&C 138:12-19)

– “33 For man is spirit. The elements are eternal, and spirit and element, inseparably connected, receive a fulness of joy; 34 And when separated, man cannot receive a fulness of joy.” (D&C 93:33-34)

– how will we have seed without end (the covenant of Abraham) if we don’t keep our bodies in the Kingdom of God forever? In my religion, having more children in heaven is the essence of heaven and progression. I claim that none of God’s subjects are anything other than the children he has bourn. He keeps having more children, so his kingdom keeps getting bigger. So it will be for us if we follow Christ.

– God organizes intelligence and leads them along, thus they are his children. He sends them to earth, they get a body, die, get their body back in the resurrection, then they do what he does (if they pass their test, this life is the test). God has had one child in the flesh, that is Jesus Christ. “The Only Begotten Son”. The rest of us are his spirit children. That does not diminish his ownership of us though. As you may have deducted, once a child of God becomes a God, they also have spirit children, and send them to earths for their testing. To have a body is to be like God. Getting a body is one of the main reasons we came to earth.

– “I now, therefore, have come down unto thee to declare unto thee the works which my hands have made, wherein my wisdom excelleth them all, for I rule in the heavens above, and in the earth beneath, in all wisdom and prudence, over all the intelligences thine eyes have seen from the beginning; I came down in the beginning in the midst of all the intelligences thou hast seen.

22 Now the Lord had shown unto me, Abraham, the intelligences that were organized before the world was; and among all these there were many of the noble and great ones;

23 And God saw these souls that they were good, and he stood in the midst of them, and he said: These I will make my rulers; for he stood among those that were spirits, and he saw that they were good; and he said unto me: Abraham, thou art one of them; thou wast chosen before thou wast born.

24 And there stood one among them that was like unto God, and he said unto those who were with him: We will go down, for there is space there, and we will take of these materials, and we will make an earth whereon these may dwell;

25 And we will prove them herewith, to see if they will do all things whatsoever the Lord their God shall command them;

26 And they who keep their first estate shall be added upon; and they who keep not their first estate shall not have glory in the same kingdom with those who keep their first estate; and they who keep their second estate shall have glory added upon their heads for ever and ever.” (Abraham 3:21-26)

– I will state the obvious, which is written in the most introductory text of my faith: namely that the body will rise from the grave, and be reunited with the spirit! Heaven is a place where people have bodies, live in families, and families can’t happen without sex. Worlds without end, you’ll never find such a creation. This is the genius of the restored truth of the latter days: that the body is central to the eternal plan of God, and is not merely to be disposed of after mortal death! Death of body is a resting, not a permanence! Are Christians clear about this? No! Are Latter-day Saint Christians clear about this? More clear than staring you in the face, yes! The universe is governed by laws which even God himself cannot break. The only reason a god is a god is because he and she have conformed to the laws of the universe. One of the laws of the universe is that we need bodies and the uniting thereof with a spouse to have full joy. Does full joy end after this life? No! And of course, there are many gods, though only 1 of them rules over us. Our God is our father. No being whom is not a child of God is ruled by God. All beings are ruled over by their celestial parent, worlds without end, forever and ever. To avoid the risk of saying something too sacred here, we will merely recall the words of Joseph Smith, that this “one eternal round”. Where did Gods begin? It’s one eternal round. Everyone has a parent... it’s a cycle, worlds without end, and without beginning. The mortal does not comprehend the “no beginning”, and alas I say it no better comprehends the “no end.” The average person has no clue about their true nature, for they have no clue about the nature of God. God has always existed, and we as his children have likewise always existed. God will always exist, and so will we. Even the devils of hell must go on and on forever, and have been forever going on. God fathered us in promoting our state, this does not suggest that we lived not before. Thus it is, we compare to understand, with the biological birth. That person did exist before it got a physical body, but the mortal parents heaped upon it a grand promotion: the body! Likewise, individual personal intelligences named you and I existed before God organized it into greater intelligence. The parent does such a vast favor for the child, that it is considered that the parent “created” the child. Indeed, for all intents and purposes of our word “created”, so he did!

– I believe sexual relations between people married by God are an eternal and divine thing, a grand system of humanity; I believe that in heaven, married people have spirit babies with each other and send them to earths (which they have the power and pleasure of creating and governing to ensure justice and mercy are balanced in the end) so they their children can get bodies LIKE THEM and the experience needed to also become Gods. I also believe we get to keep our bodies in heaven, they are wonderful and bring much pleasure and are beautiful and good. Some think Adam and Eve sinned in having sex. No way! Sex is good. The Adam and Eve story? I think Eve is amazing! She helped Adam learn about how it’s worth it to go through pain in order to have joy! I believe we EVERY HUMAN ON EARTH will come out of their graves and be made perfect, impervious to disease and aging. Getting our bodies back is a free gift from our kind God whom made us. That’s a big part of the Jesus story, that he, the Son of God, “broke the bands of death”, and is responsible for giving everyone their body back. Some say you’ll be more free without a body. But meditation shows that we are quite capable of having larger than life experiences WHILE having bodies. So I think bodies are good. Just because we have a body in heaven doesn’t mean we can’t fly and teleport and move mountains; we just haven’t learned how to do that stuff yet, it will come. So this little rant can show you a bit more about why I think marriage and children is so important... because it’s the order of the universe...



## Pre-Mortality, Corporal Resurrection, & Eternal Family - A letter to a friend

(non-LDS Christians think that we did not live before this earth, and that the resurrection isn't literal, and that the family is not eternal. They think there can't be any truth except what is written in the bible, not allowing more modern universal modern written word from God. This letter responds to those things from the LDS point of view, LDS meaning The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints) everyone will live forever; we all lived in the beginning, no one will ever cease to exist. 1 Cor. 15 says as in Adam all die so in Christ all live. ; from Adam all die, now Jesus overcame death for everyone; for followers of Christ, massive blessings come, a more "abundant" life (not \$, but glory in the Kingdom etc.); also refer to 1 Cor. 15 about telestial and celestial bodies etc., it says "so also is the resurrection of the dead"; this means depending on how valiant a person is, they will accordingly get resurrected with that level of body; this doesn't mean a cripple in this life is not righteous! It means in the next world, the righteous will have greater blessings in this regard.

1.01 I know it says death to the wicked in your bible. Some places it even says eternal death. My bible says that is figurative. My bible says one of the gifts in the category of "God sends rain to the just and the unjust" is that we all get bodies (except Lucifer and some of his followers as you'll read later in this article).

1.1 I'll refer to "my bible" a few times here, you already have the classic Christian bible, so I really have nothing to say to you if I just base my beliefs on that; If I merely had your bible as the text for my religion, we would be the same religion. However bible believers have had a hard time sorting that out, and have split into many schools of thought as evidenced by hearing one thing in one congregation, and another in another. ( I've seen how a preacher in one congregation can interpret something differently from the same bible) If I have anything unique to say to you, it will come from my bible. When I say, "my bible", it means the collection of your bible, and "the book of Mormon", and "the Doctrine and Covenants" (D&C), and "The Pearl of Great Price"; these are the 4 books of my bible; your bible has 66 books in it, my bible has 69. Truly, if we are trying to teach each other out of the same book, we will merely go back and forth bickering about feelings and interpretations. Hence though you may not find it very valuable, most of my message in this letter comes from "my bible", a different book, one you may not be as familiar with. Perhaps you'll consider it a fairy tale, yet I still invite you to continue reading for interest sake. A better knowledge of LDS stuff won't hurt you (PS you don't know it already, you can always learn more, I know that because I've been studying the stuff (from "my" bible) for a decade and can still learn more; I don't have it memorized, and when someone puts things together in a certain order it can help it to make sense; however I'm sorry this letter is not very organized and falls short of what it could be; it does not do "my" bible justice; Perhaps you've read it, perhaps even more than once, but any bible student knows there is more to be had)

2. "Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee; and before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee, and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations." Jeremiah 1:5

3. "And there was war in heaven; Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon and his angels fought against Michael;" Rev. 12:6;

I believe mankind (me, you, everyone as individuals) also existed before coming to earth. my bible says this: " 29 Man was also in the beginning with God. Intelligence, or the light of truth, was not created or made, neither indeed can be.

30 All truth is independent in that sphere in which God has placed it, to act for itself, as all intelligence also; otherwise there is no existence." (D&C 93:29-30)

Another interesting thing on these lines is the idea that no one will disappear. A person's being cannot vanish. For sinners, they won't have as high a quality of life in the next world, but exist they shall. Christ said he came to give life and that more abundantly. A parent doesn't kill its disobedient child, it just doesn't get to pour as many blessings on it. That is the perspective that sits well with me. Again if this is unclear in the bible, that's ok, I know it seems heresy to you, but I believe in more than "the bible". You might consider that God has slain some of his children already, but he slew their bodies, not their spirits.

5.5 this is from my bible about having a body forever: "1 There are two kinds of beings in heaven, namely: Angels, who are resurrected personages, having bodies of flesh and bones—

2 For instance, Jesus said: Handle me and see, for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have.

3 Secondly: the spirits of just men made perfect, they who are not resurrected, but inherit the same glory." D&C 129:1-3)

5.6 here my bible speaks of both God the Father and Jesus Christ having physical literal bodies, but not the Holy Ghost: 22 The Father has a body of flesh and bones as tangible as man's; the Son also; but the Holy Ghost has not a body of flesh and bones, but is a personage of Spirit. Were it not so, the Holy Ghost could not dwell in us.

5.7 this from my bible also speaks of getting a body forever " 12 And there were gathered together in one place an innumerable company of the spirits of the just, who had been faithful in the testimony of Jesus while they lived in mortality;

13 And who had offered sacrifice in the similitude of the great sacrifice of the Son of God, and had suffered tribulation in their Redeemer's name.

14 All these had departed the mortal life, firm in the hope of a glorious resurrection, through the grace of God the Father and his Only Begotten Son, Jesus Christ.

15 I beheld that they were filled with joy and gladness, and were rejoicing together because the day of their deliverance was at hand.

16 They were assembled awaiting the advent of the Son of God into the spirit world, to declare their redemption from the bands of death.

17 Their sleeping dust was to be restored unto its perfect frame, bone to his bone, and the sinews and the flesh upon them, the spirit and the body to be united never again to be divided, that they might receive a fulness of joy.

18 While this vast multitude waited and conversed, rejoicing in the hour of their deliverance from the chains of death, the Son of God appeared, declaring liberty to the captives who had been faithful;

19 And there he preached to them the everlasting gospel, the doctrine of the resurrection and the redemption of mankind from the fall, and from individual sins on conditions of repentance.” (D&C 138:12-19)

Leaders of my church have summarized it this way: “IN THE PREMORTAL REALM, spirit sons and daughters knew and worshipped God as their Eternal Father and accepted His plan by which His children could obtain a physical body and gain earthly experience to progress toward perfection and ultimately realize their divine destiny as heirs of eternal life.”

7. Part of the bible I read from (includes the D&C, words from modern prophets (Joseph Smith etc.)) says this:

“For man is spirit. The elements are eternal, and spirit and element, inseparably connected, receive a fulness of joy;

34 And when separated, man cannot receive a fulness of joy.” (this is why a literal physical resurrection is important, getting our bodies back from out of their graves; Jesus has his body back, we want to be like him, he is the ideal of happiness)

Also note “element is eternal”; I’m not talking about radioactive decay, I’m talking about the core stuff, perhaps carbon or the atom etc. It goes back to the topic of God creating things from existing materials, etc.

8. I believe in a literal resurrection, everyone gets their bodies back (except Lucifer and other people whom were so wicked in the beginning that they never merited getting a body on earth in the first place). Book of rev. says before earth life, 2/3 of the spirits followed God, and 1/3 of them rebelled and were cast down with Lucifer (they are the spirits that go around tempting us, they will never be blessed with a body)

9. how will we have seed without end (the covenant of Abraham) if we don’t keep our bodies in the Kingdom of God forever? In my religion, having more children in heaven is the essence of heaven and progression. I claim that none of God’s subjects are anything other than the children he has bourn. He keeps having more children, so his kingdom keeps getting bigger. So it will be for us if we follow Christ.

10. in case you don’t like the idea of having a marriage in heaven with your wife (husband for women), consider that neither is the man without the woman in the Lord. Perhaps you think of the passage about not marrying or given in marriage, but that passage refers to how we get a spouse now, and those who put it off forever, will never have that joy.

11. we believe in fact that without a wife a man cannot progress in heaven. We believe God has a wife, and thus can have children. We believe we are the children of God destined to become like him if we follow and receive and use the power of Jesus Christ.

12. In summary, I believe that we all lived from the beginning, that God was wiser than us, so he helped us come to earth etc. so we can progress to become like him. Jesus Christ is the central figure in God’s plan for our salvation. After this earth we will live forever with bodies as families in the presence of God. We will “grow up” and “become like our parents”.

12.5 So yes there is a “Mother in Heaven” as well as a Father in Heaven. That helps us realize the divinity of women! Women are divine! God would not be God without his wife. Not even God can create a person without a wife. That’s contrary to the law of heaven. There are several things God cannot do: for example, he cannot tell a lie, he cannot commit adultery, he cannot destroy himself, he cannot take away our power to choose for ourselves; there are laws in the universe, God abides by those laws, that is what makes him God.

12.6 was Jesus married? He must have been. Does his bride the church mean he can’t have a wife? No, He can’t be a perfect God without a wife. He can’t have children without a physical wife, and without having children, his kingdom wouldn’t exist or grow. Christ is also the father of our salvation, that is why we worship him and call him our king. I also believe Jesus Christ created/molded our physical bodies; however he did not organize our spirits, it was The Father who did that. Furthermore, Jesus Christ was the firstborn in the spirit. Gods first spirit child was Jesus Christ. God later fathered the body of Jesus Christ also.

12.6 founding fathers of Christianity also believed that we can become Gods. Like God in every way. That is the purpose and power of Jesus: to pull us up, to bridge the gap, to work the divine in us. That is why we love him because he first loved us.

13. Does our becoming God’s make God less important? No! It gives him more glory. Our kingdom is always beneath his kingdom. It’s like how a grandfather doesn’t get upset when he gets grandchildren, or when he sees his children succeed. All parents want their children to succeed. A successful child can even go to say how great the parent was. God is so powerful, that he can make me a God. I won’t rule over God, I’ll rule under him. Lucifer fell because he wanted to force his way into Godhood rather than becoming a God in the appropriate way; Lucifer also wanted to take Gods place, and that is heresy and evil. No one will ever take Gods place.

14. thus the doctrine that mankind was also in the beginning with God is very important in understanding the plan of God.

14.5 one more doctrine in case you were wondering, God organizes intelligence and leads them along, thus they are his children. He sends them to earth, they get a body, die, get their body back in the resurrection, then they do what he does (if they pass their test, this life is the test). God has had one child in the flesh, that is Jesus Christ. “The Only Begotten Son”. The rest of us are his spirit children. That does not diminish his ownership of us though. As you may have deducted, once a child of God becomes a God, they also have spirit children, and send them to earths for their testing. To have a body is to be like God. Getting a body is one of the main reasons we came to earth.

15. pose any question to me and I’ll answer it – I haven’t explained everything here. When you ask a question, those of the nature of “but the bible doesn’t say that” are not as interesting to me. I never intended this to be a mere bible message. If that is heresy to you, I don’t mean to offend, and I respect your views, and applaud the good you do in the world. The type of questions I’m interested in are those which clarify the message of this letter rather than look for a biblical source for the letter. On some level all of this is in the bible, and we could go there, and I will if you like to some extent, but truly, that’s not the point. If that is heresy to you, that’s ok, as we’ve said before we can have different views and still be friends. Even if you think me hell bound for rejecting “perfect bible Christianity”, you can still be my friend. PS I don’t think you guys are hell bound, and am not offended if you think I am. I’ll take it



further; You're quite familiar with LDS stuff (much of this letter was probably a repeat for you), so you understand the whole separate levels of heaven thing which the LDS teach; I don't even say you're not going to the highest level of heaven; It's not my place to judge; when people do their best they get the best reward; yes it's true that LDS teach that the highest heaven is for those who have LDS temple ceremonies performed for them, yet there is a stipulation for those who weren't involved; the stipulation is them getting that temple stuff after they are dead, awaiting the resurrection; however we encourage persons to read "my bible" and wrestle with this stuff and not get in a "I'll change when I'm dead" setting, that never does much; the point of this final rant is to say that in no way do I say you're not going to the highest heaven; there is so much confusion these days, I'm an imperfect messenger, LDS prophets are imperfect messengers, etc. etc., that many people simply aren't going to hear the message God really wants them to hear; the key is that people really truly do their best, and pray very hard to find truth, and are willing to stand alone when called upon by God, willing to be in a minority of 1, etc. A note: though myself etc. are imperfect messengers, I do believe that "my bible" is absolutely true, pure revelation from the mouth of God. I take my bible as seriously as you do your bible. I also have another tool, it's living prophets. When a passage in my bible isn't clear, they can clarify it via God telling them the clarification. Such clarifications apply to the whole world and are binding. Another important point is that not everything a leader in "my church" says is this type of depth binding revelation. Messages from "the first presidency" and those which are repeated over time are the ones which are considered "revelation" and binding in their authority on the same level as "bible".

16. some of this is hard to understand and may be unclear, but the universe isn't 1st grade, it's so fascinating that it can keep a genius on his toes, and thrill the best and brightest. It can at its core also be very simple and clear. I've not focused on that so much, so if you have questions of that nature, refer to the website sponsored by "my church" ; the best site I can think of is this <http://www.mormonnewsroom.org/topics-and-background/> it has an a-z index of church stuff even the hard questions. While not sponsored by the church, [fairmormon.org](http://fairmormon.org) is also a good one.

17. you may not be into any of this, that's ok. It's been fun for me to put this together. I also feel bad if I don't explain myself when I say something like I did on the FB message of "things that begin have an end". God bless you this passage from the book of Abraham (from POGP in my bible) it's very important to the above logic:

"I now, therefore, have come down unto thee to declare unto thee the works which my hands have made, wherein my wisdom excelleth them all, for I rule in the heavens above, and in the earth beneath, in all wisdom and prudence, over all the intelligences thine eyes have seen from the beginning; I came down in the beginning in the midst of all the intelligences thou hast seen. 22 Now the Lord had shown unto me, Abraham, the intelligences that were organized before the world was; and among all these there were many of the noble and great ones; 23 And God saw these souls that they were good, and he stood in the midst of them, and he said: These I will make my rulers; for he stood among those that were spirits, and he saw that they were good; and he said unto me: Abraham, thou art one of them; thou wast chosen before thou wast born. 24 And there stood one among them that was like unto God, and he said unto those who were with him: We will go down, for there is space there, and we will take of these materials, and we will make an earth whereon these may dwell; 25 And we will prove them herewith, to see if they will do all things whatsoever the Lord their God shall command them; 26 And they who keep their first estate shall be added upon; and they who keep not their first estate shall not have glory in the same kingdom with those who keep their first estate; and they who keep their second estate shall have glory added upon their heads for ever and ever. 27 And the Lord said: Whom shall I send? And one answered like unto the Son of Man: Here am I, send me. And another answered and said: Here am I, send me. And the Lord said: I will send the first. 28 And the second was angry, and kept not his first estate; and, at that day, many followed after him." (Abraham 3:21-28)

The reader refused to read my letter because I referred to things not in the Bible, and I responded thus:

That's fine that you are not interested I will avoid pestering you with these things in the future. My message is something you are inherently opposed to, that your bible is not the only standard of truth. Since there is this foundational disagreement we can politely tip our hats and focus our conversation on different things. My attempts to show you from the bible that the bible is not the only standard of truth have been in vain. You say the bible can be like art that several people see differently. Well I can use the bible to say that there are more venues of truth than that book. So really your rejection of my extra biblical literature is a rejection of the bible itself... This outright rejection of my view evidenced by your refusing to read my letter to you is slightly disappointing. I put a lot of thought into that and it's addressed specifically to you. If a pagan wrote me a letter I would read it out of respect for my pagan friend (and yes, it's OK to be friends with pagans). After reading the letter I would tell him thank you for your time though I do not share those views. At that point I would either leave it alone or try to sport with my friend in showing him fallacies of his logic and try to persuade him to my point of view. Either way I would do my best to respect my friend. At the same time I recognize you are busy and didn't necessarily ask for the letter, and perhaps reading such a letter is against your religion (hopefully this level of close mindedness is not a tenant), so I understand your hesitancy to read my letter. If I've offended you I apologize and will seek more neutral topics in the future as I value your friendship regardless of religion. I also note that despite differences our religions do have much in common. May God truly bless you as he has in the past.

### The Solution to Pharaoh's Dilemma: Overcoming Death

The authoritative solution to death is found from the prophets and temples...

Ideas based on a lecture by Hugh Nibley

Pharaoh was worried very much. He was not focused on death but on resurrection, on eternal life, not an eternal tomb. He was preoccupied about overcoming death he spent his days in the genealogical archives looking through files trying to see where he had

Authority he wanted to imitate the ways of the Ancients like Noah and perform the rites and ordinances of eternal life he was heartbroken to find out that he could not find any link to this Authority in his genealogy and so he imitated Noah and created temples and these temples mimicked the order of the ancients.

The temples were the CenterPoint hierocentric center of the universe there a scale model of the universe; they are where we began to understand life after death you see this is the universal preoccupation of the human race, death. no one can get around it happens to everyone and so in the temples they prepared for the next life the prepared to be risen from the dead and they took upon themselves vestitures which would enable them so to do; of course these rituals were revealed by Angelic beings which came and showed them to Noah, Adam, et-cetera. And of course the temples are the perfect universities, the first observatories, etc.

## The 7 Deadly Heresies by Elder Bruce R McConkie – Lecture Highlights

-God knows all things, he is not continuing to learn. If he did not know all things, he could not save any of his creations. This is a quotation from Joseph Smith.

-Evolution in the way many see it (Darwinism) is entirely false. There was no death before the Fall of Adam. There were not things dying and evolving before Adam. The fall brought death into the world. See 2 Nephi 2:22 where it expressly says this.

-There is no doctrine of post-death second chances for Celestial Kingdom residence. “Those who reject the gospel in this life and then receive it in the spirit world go not to the celestial, but to the terrestrial kingdom.”

Our work for the dead is for who did not have the chance to hear the gospel in this life. It’s not our place to judge who that may or may not be.

-There is no advancing from one kingdom of glory to the next in the life to come. Where you are assigned is where you stay. “Of those in the telestial world it is written: “And they shall be servants of the Most High; but where God and Christ dwell they cannot come, worlds without end” (D&C 76:112).”

-Temple marriage does not ensure that we will teach the Celestial Kingdom.

-We don’t have to be perfect in this life to merit living with God in the hereafter, but recall these principals, “(1) that this life is the appointed time for men to prepare to meet God—this life is the day of our probation; and (2) that the same spirit which possesses our bodies at the time we go out of this mortal life shall have power to possess our bodies in that eternal world.”

We need to be going towards God, and that not superficially.

-To see the full text of this discourse [click here](#).

## Creation Fall Atonement Narrative

Elder McConkie taught that there are 3 pillars of eternity, as follows:

1. creation of the world,
2. the fall of Adam & Eve, and
3. the atonement of Jesus Christ.

Here are various scenes where we find these 3 pillars to be of use. These are analogies which help us understand these pillars. I view the original pillars to be factual accounts, not purely symbolic, though here we will consider various symbols.

Let me know of more you think of!

### A. Life

1. Pre-mortality,
2. earth life,
3. the life to come

### B. Bodies

1. living as spirits,
2. living with bodies on earth,
3. living with resurrected bodies in the kingdom of God

### C. The Batman Film Series (Not that I suggest those movies, which I don’t, though the music is good.)

1. “Batman Begins” with fear,
2. episode 2, Batman falls in chaos,
3. episode 3, Batman rises by pain.



(images spliced from the movie covers)

D. The literary theme

1. Hero learns of identity & mission
2. Hero embarks on the mission and finds much difficulty
3. Hero overcomes through great sacrifice, successfully completing his mission

E. Star Wars

1. Luke learns of the force
2. Luke fights against the dark side of the force
3. Luke becomes a Jedi master and restores balance to the force

F. Candide by Voltaire

1. Candide begins with pure optimism
2. Candide experiences setbacks of every kind
3. Candide resorts to his garden, where his feelings are tempered with wisdom as he seeks to live a quiet life

G. College

1. The student hears of many possibilities & of his potential
2. The student fails in obtaining all of his ambitions as he seeks to balance work school family life and his various passions. He is saddened by his inability to learn all things and help all people at the present time.
3. The student relinquishes various academic aspirations and performs in a specific field, trusting that someday as time goes on, his heart will find knowledge, and he will somehow make a significant contribution to human kind in the various ways his heart feels to serve. He finds hope in religion which promises that he eventually shall obtain all knowledge and all power to serve others.

H. The Family Man

1. The young man is ambitious about family life, and obtains a wife and children
2. The man experiences all manner of difficulties and is pushed further than he ever thought possible. He makes many mistakes and searches his soul to find strength to rise to his tasks
3. The man becomes temperate and charitable, and is a legend among his people, playing a large role in the redemption of his posterity. He is not perfect, but he knows that as he continues improving he will become a God in eternity, and gain the title which is the highest: Heavenly Father.

(Note: for the woman, same narrative, and she obtains the title Heavenly Mother, whom is Father's secret weapon, or in other words, she is the nucleus of the universe around which all else goes, she is the definition of purity and good, and Father's job is to help people become like Mother. On a smaller scale, as President Russel M Nelson said, he chose to be a medical doctor because he could not choose to be a mother. He and God both have complete reverence for woman. The Hebrew word for God is actually a plural, Elohim, the 'im' meaning plural, which suggests that God is the team of Heavenly Father and Heavenly Mother.)

## Can't Advance Kingdoms Once Assigned – Quotes

It has been asked if it is possible for one who inherits the telestial glory to advance in time to the celestial glory?

The answer to this question is, No! The scriptures are clear on this point.

Speaking of those who go to the telestial kingdom, the revelation says: "And they shall be servants of the Most high; but where God and Christ dwell they cannot come, worlds without end (D&C 766:112).

*Joseph Fielding Smith Jr., Doc. Of Sal., Vol 2, p. 31*

There are some people who have supposed that if we are quickened telestial bodies that eventually, throughout the ages of eternity, we will continue to progress until we will find our place in the celestial kingdom, but the scriptures and revelations of God have said that those who are quickened telestial bodies cannot come where God and Christ dwell, worlds without end.

*George Albert Smith, CR, Oct. 1945, p. 172*

After a person has been assigned to his place in the kingdom, either in the telestial, the terrestrial, or the celestial, or to his exaltation, he will never advance from his assigned glory to another glory. That is eternal! That is why we must make our decisions early in life and why it is imperative that such decisions be right.

*The Teachings of Spencer W. Kimball, p. 50*

## Does A Person's Body Need To Leave It's Grave For A Resurrection To Occur? Yes

Does a person's body need to leave it's grave for a resurrection to occur?

On the one hand, Brigham said Joseph is resurrected, on the other, the church inspected the casket recently and he was still there.

Jesus' body left his tomb at his resurrection.

The discovered bones witnessed resurrecting, those bones were used.

Many of the graves among the Nephites and Jews opened at the resurrection of Christ.

But is there a possibility that a resurrection can occur without needing the corpse?  
Are these comings forth just for our faith to grow, or are they an essential part of resurrection?

## Analogy of Sleep as a Fall, a Death

We fall into sleep so we can have needed strength to work.

We rise in the morning as a resurrection.

To sleep is to die.

Each day is a life.

## Plan of Salvation Study Resources

-<https://scottwoodward.org/>

-Scripture Citation Index: website and app: topical index of journal of discourses, etc.

-<https://thefairestgem.com>

-

## Who Judges

All the faithful who are exalted will hold judgment in their spheres, under God the Father and Christ.

"Until the Ancient of days came, and judgment was given to the saints of the most High; and the time came that the saints possessed the kingdom." (Daniel 7:22)

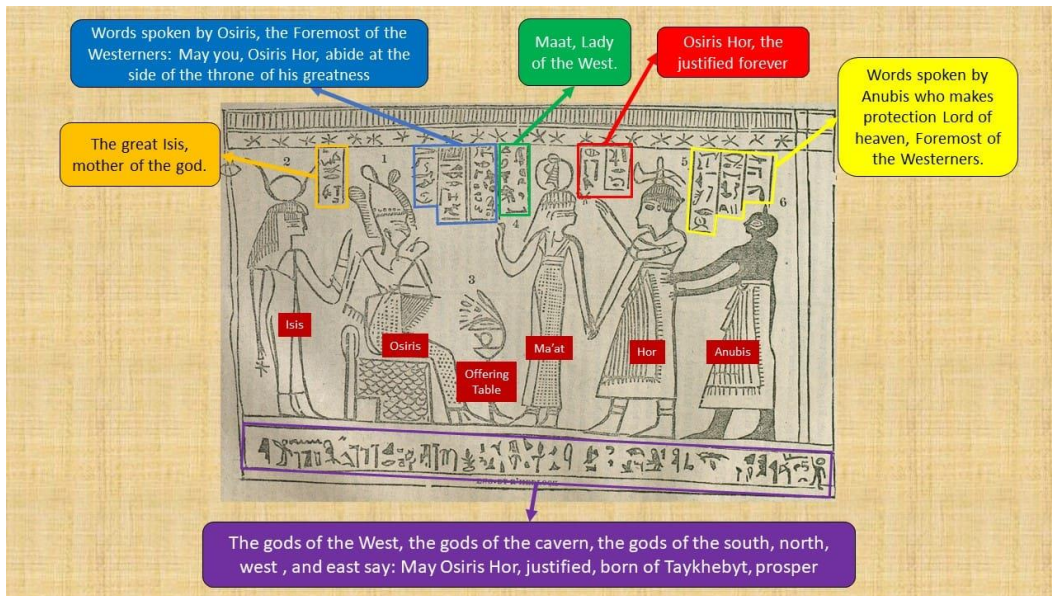
"Do you not know that the saints will judge the world? And if you are to judge the world, are you not competent to judge trivial cases?" (1 Corinthians 6:2)

We each are witnesses. Everyone is seen by others, and must stand as a witness for all they've seen.

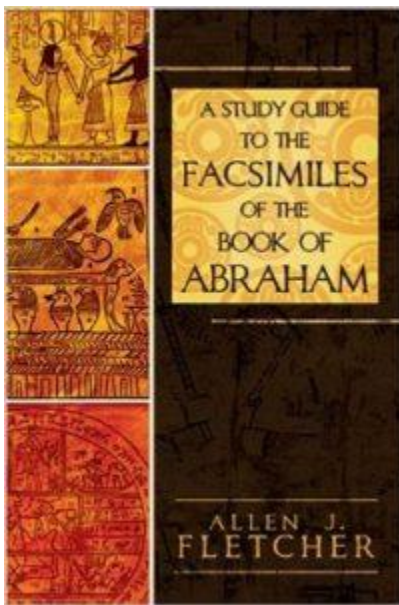
## Translations of Facsimile 3

From Jacob Hawkins, looking further into the source.





A Study Guide to the Facsimiles of the Book of Abraham by Allen J Fletcher – Book Notes – [look into permissions](#)



The Facsimiles of the Book of Abraham are a part of The Pearl of Great Price. The Pearl of Great Price is one of the canonized scriptures of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

Amun\_min\_ra raised arm Ankh boat Cubit facsimile 1 Facsimile 2 Facsimile 3 Isis with Anhk and Jerusalem heaven and earth join sign Jesus Osiris from rc.com khnum Osiris Ra the sun god boat in heaven Resurrection of Osiris The court of Osiris Judgement Wadjet eye, eye of Horus

see also <http://www.legrandlbaker.org/wp-content/uploads/2012/11/Egyptian-theology-and-the-Gospel-of-Christ.-LeGrand-Baker.pdf>

References: See back of book and pages throughout the book. Here mainly (with some exceptions) are merely referenced the pages of this book where these things are referenced. Most things said in this book are quotes from scholarly works from egyptologists and historians.

### **Ch.1: The Mission of Abraham to Egypt:**

-these show the Celestial Kingdom, the creation, the garden of Eden, the earth in Telestial state, the resurrection, and return to the Celestial Kingdom. The journey of the existence of mankind.

-They speak of the location of Gods inhabitation.

-the need for sacrifice in the plan of salvation Facs. 1

-scrolls Joseph Smith obtained had Joseph into Egypt writings as well

-Joseph Smith said these coming about is the Lord beginning to reveal PEACE and truth pg.x

-there were more scroll Joseph Smith never got around to publishing the translation of that was left with his mother

-angel struck Pharaoh for trying to marry Abrahams wife; Abraham by the laying on of hands gave him a Priesthood blessing to heal him; this resulted in them letting Abraham sit on Pharaohs throne and teach the people.

-Nibley says the facsimiles were common Egyptian symbols.

-these are to help teach

-Egyptians got their theology this way: the first Pharaoh of Egypt's mother was named Egyptus. Egyptus was the daughter of Ham. Ham was the son of Noah. (\*We see much of what they have comes from the prophet Noah and thus much truth is to remnant with the Egyptians.) p6

-Egyptian mythology has "Osiris", one legend of having lived and died on earth then raised himself again and succeeded in making himself the god of the dead. This person is Jesus Christ. p7

-Osiris was said to have lived before he came to earth, and that his premarital status was that of godhood. (\*Such is what LDS teach is how Jesus Christ was in premortality.) p7

-Osiris was called the firstborn of his father Ra, the god of heaven. He said, "My body is everlastingness." (\*Jesus Christ is the First Born in the flesh, the Only Begotten of his Father in Heaven, God The Father) (Bulge, The Book of the Dead, 550.) p8

-In Egypt "it is not possible for a king to rule without the priesthood" they taught.

-Combining the powers of kingship with High Priest was the key to all according to the Egyptians. (See Nibley Abraham in Egypt, 83-6).

-Amon is the Father of the God's (\*or as Joseph Smith teaches it, "Ahman" is the personal name of Father in heaven. See D&C where Christ refers to himself as Son Ahman in D&C 78:20 and D&C 95:17) (See Nibley Abraham in Egypt, 83-6).

-Amon said of Osiris "I am thy beloved father who establishes thy authority... who confirms thy titles." (\*Just as God The Father only deals directly with man in introducing The Son Jesus Christ ever since the Fall of Adam (see McConkie "The Mortal Messiah") (See Nibley Abraham in Egypt, 83-6). p8

-Ra was the father of Osiris (Budge, The Gods of the Egyptians, 2:141) p8

-Speaking of Osiris, Bonwick says "His birth, death, burial, resurrection, and ascension embraced the leading points of Egyptian theology" (Bonwick, "Egyptian Belief and Modern Thought", 150.

-Egyptians held Pharaoh to be god, and he would daily open the holy of holies and commune with god they say. p9

-Baptism in Egypt is called "the waters of purification". People were immersed in water which absolutely cleansed the soul and the person was said to be regenerated. p10, Bonwick, Egyptian Belief and Modern Thought, 416.

-The Eucharist (sacrament) was known in Egypt. The bread after sacerdotal rites becomes mystically the body of Osiris; lead the partakers to grow into the very nature of the gods. (ibid., 416-18.) p10

-When the sacrament could not be had by one, Priests would take it to them (above ref.). p10

-Being baptized to become a Christian is just like in Egypt "by the same rite one becomes an Osiris" (Madsen quoting Cyril in "The Temple in Antiquity", 27). p10-11.

-There was another baptism, or washing, where the brow, face, ears, nose, breast, and so forth were anointed. It was said to clothe them with the holy spirit. They also received a garment. These pointed to the Christ, and receiving nails in the hands and feet was imitated (above ref.). p11

-Egyptian prince of the gods had a whip and a crook one in each hand. In the right hand of this prince is the crook, in the left hand is the whip (\*this reminds me of how Christ gathers his sheep on his right hand with a shepherds' crook, and on his left are the goats, which get whipped, or suffer the consequences of their actions). p12

-Osiris was called the Manifestor of the Hidden Father , the Builder of the Temple of Peace. \*Like Christ.

-The aim of every good man in Egypt was to become an Osiris (\*like how we try to live to be born again a new creature, a Son of God by the power of Christ, becoming "a new creature" as Alma puts it).

-Osiris was even prefixed on some of their names.

-It was said that at the end of 3 days being dead, Osiris rose and ascended into heaven.

-Facsimile from Book of Abraham (In the LDS book "The Pearl of Great Price" one of the LDS standard books of scripture) #1 refers to death and resurrection of the God Osiris. We read in the description that it is Abraham being sacrificed by wicked priests, this Abraham acting as a type of Christ, and the Egyptians could relate to



that because of their legends of Osiris. Abraham was teaching them that one Jesus Christ would be born, who would be their Osiris they expected. p13 etc.

-One Egyptian picture of Osiris dead has 2 women looking at him with their hands in front of their eyes (\*like a veil covering their eyes as was done oft and women still use veils in our day in some cultures like weddings, coronaries, and other religious rites. )

-There are Egyptian pictures depicting Osiris rising from up off of his death bed / bier. p14

-Symbol of how Osiris takes his place at the center of the universe. p14

-Facsimile #2 has some 12 references to Osiris (\*Jesus Christ). This is an Egyptian document, and the symbols were used by Abraham the prophet to depict the Messiah Jesus Chris (\* just as all prophets did since the beginning (see Jacob 4 in the Book of Mormon)). The document includes references to Osiris as the mighty God, the Lord of heaven, earth, the netherworld, and the great waters, a manifestor of resurrection, control over earth fire water and air, “The Opener of the Ways”, and as “god of the lifted-arm”. p16-17

-Facsimile #3 shows Osiris as a resurrected being sitting on his throne in the act of judgment. p17.

-Symbols and words in Facsimile speak of Isis being the mother of the god, of being justified forever, of Osiris being the Lord of heaven.

-Paul’s people he taught had an inscription of worship “TO THE UNKNOWN GOD”. In Abraham’s day, the case would have been that they would write “TO THE MIGHTY GOD Osiris”. Paul said, “Whom therefore ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you” (Acts 17:23). p19

-Abraham escaping death on the alter of the wicked priests is symbolic of how Christ was resurrected. p20

-Abraham is shown, for what Abraham went through is a type of what happens t Osiris, whom we know to be Christ.

-Abraham had been in the presence of God, this is one of the reasons why we use him as a type of Christ, a symbol to teach us about Christ.

-Abraham was invited by the pharaoh to sit on his own throne and teach his people (\*this is like how Christ sits on the throne of his Father).

-Joseph Smith said at mans creation intelligence burst upon him -lectures on Faith, 14-15.

-Adam had no veil to separate him from the presence of God and enjoyed communion with him. -above referenced.

## **Ch.2 A Brief Overview of the Gods and Symbols of Egypt as Found in the Facsimiles:**

-In Facsimile 3, The courtroom of Osiris is shown as having a canopy of stars, representing the majesty and power with that office of government. -p30

-God holds a scepter as seen here and in the scriptures p32

-God wears a crown as seen here and in the scriptures p32

-Adam being among and naming the animals in Garden of Eden he was being tutored in sacred things, tutored in eternal things, the animals each in some way mirrored the ways of their creator, for all natural things bare witness their creator. p24.

-Deseret is the name for the bee we have in the Book of Mormon from the Jaredites. Those are the only people whose language was not changed at the tower of Babel. We call the bee deseret today from what we see it do. Since the bee had not the same function in the Garden of Eden, Adam could not have observed these traits, thus we infer that he had the gift of revelation as he named the animals. p24

-Horus Hawk is a figure in the facsimile, it represents aspects of God such as ascension, divine kingship, and the power of light over darkness (\*perhaps illustrated by the image of a bird flying above the clouds into the light).

-Osiris is depicted as rising off of the altar of death at the command of Horus. p25.

-Anubis the god of death is shown. p26

-the figures in vases represent the four cardinal directions, protection for the dead until the resurrection. p26.

-the crocodile is a symbol of death, the god of the water.

-the lotus flower (Lilly) is shown as a long-time symbol of the resurrection, life springing from death, inexhaustible life.

-an image with lines represents the cosmic ocean, the vast domain of space as Nibley calls it. (later in the book we speak of this symbol being at the bottom of the image to show that we get to look into the heavens, sail the sea of the cosmic ocean like God does as we see him depicted here on a ship as they did in those days, and see God on his throne this is the purpose of the gospel and this access is what the image is attempting to teach ) p27.

-The Ram headed God was symbol of the most high God.

-Amon-Ra the creator God who, although “hidden” is manifest in the sun (Wilkenson, 92). p27

-Ra or Re is the creator sun-god who sails in his ship in a solar boat in his celestial journeys.

-Hathor is the mother of Horus, called “the substance of the sun”

-The Ankh symbol that characters hold is similar to a cross shape with a circle on top, it symbolizes a knot or sash, representing a covenant or oath. (\*Like how our covenant with Christ begins with him on the cross, and how our covenants we make with God bind us or tie us to him and his aid and direction and destiny).

-Crown of Osiris has feathers and is his greatest and oldest crown and represents spirit and truth.

-Anubis is the keeper of the mysteries and holds the Ankh symbol, represents the messenger who goes before to prepare the way (\*like John the baptist and Joseph Smith).

–Chart correlating Egyptian idea of God (“Neter”) in the Facsimiles with attributes of God in the scriptures:

Osiris (The Son)= The Son

Min (Father)= Father

Khnum (Creator)= Creator

Throne= Throne

Amon-Ra (Hidden)= Hidden

Seker (Death and Resurrection)= Resurrection

Was (scepter)= Scepter

Crook and Flail (King and Priest)= King and Priest

Crown (Divine authority)= Crown

Horus (Priesthood and Kingship as office of power and light)= Priesthood as office of power and light

Ankh (Oath, knot, binding)= Covenant, sealing and binding power

Atum (The Ancient One)= Adam The Ancient of Days

Nut (Bosom, Heavenly Heliopolis)= Bosom, Holy City New Jerusalem

Isis & Nephthys (Eternity Future Eternity Past)= From all eternity to all eternity

Anubis (Keys to Mysteries)= Keys to open and shut

Thoth (Intelligence)= Holy Ghost

Hathor (Spirit)= Spirit

Horus (Light)= Light

Maat (Truth)= Truth

Ptah (The Word)= Word

Set (Seth) (Darkness, death, evil, opposition, captivity)= Satan, darkness, death, evil, opposition, captivity

A list of scriptures referencing these p 32-33.

-The Hypocephalus is an ancient document similar to the image we see in the Facsimiles of Abraham. About one hundred have been found.

### **Ch.3 Facsimile 1:**

-the Egyptian “Sed-festival” was where the king would have another person ritually put to death then resurrected in his place symbolizing the renewal of his powers on the throne (Nibley) p37

- the 4 vases with heads show the 4 quarters of the earth and that principle applies to all persons. p39.
- Egyptians use a bird figure to represent the human spirit (\*like we do the Holy Ghost)
- this Horus Hawk is also called “the holy hawk” (\*like the Holy Ghost).
- Facsimile 1 has Abrahams hands over the face, which was an Egyptian symbol of prayer p41
- when a person is baptized it’s like burying and resurrecting them, symbolic of such, and the lion bier in Facs. 1 represents this, better said, baptism represents this place of death and sacrifice and rebirth etc. p43
- the tail of the lion death bed is raised, showing that though death is serious, this lion looks like a happy puppy, this shows that there is something to look forward to, life after death. (Nibley) p43.
- the lion being part of the death bed shows how anyone facing a lion faces certain death. p43 The baptismal font is like entering the mouth of a lion. p44.
- Facs. 1 the vases under the alter represent the 4 quarters of the earth where our bodily remains may spread, but must be brought back together for the resurrection. p45
- this directions pattern is seen with Abraham when he is promised seed in the north south east and west (Gen. 28)
- in Luke 13:29 Savior said the gathering of his people will be from the east north south and west. p46
- the king of Egypt wanted the attributes of who was sacrificed to come into himself. (\*this is like how Christ’s death helps us in our progress)
- The Egyptian king wanted to sacrifice Abraham in particular because Abraham held the Priesthood, and the king wanted that Priesthood. (\*another wicked interpolation of this is when Cain tried to get power from shedding blood)
- the people were sad when the Lord smote and killed and Priest among them because their hope of regeneration and getting the Priesthood was gone. p49
- the lotus flower is shown which represents resurrection, and that suggests that the person obtains the gift that Osiris had, life again, and in a way puts us on equal grounds as him, having obtained such like he did p50.
- the lotus flower as shown in the Facs. shows that like how this plant grows in difficult terrain, so need we bear witness of the gospel in dark and dangerous places. (Nibley) p 51
- the person shown on the alter is the same person we see in Facs. 3 that sits on the throne. p52
- the person in the ship in Facs. 2 shows how Egyptians said that the gods go forth in their ships to plough and plant the earth p57
- the Egyptians thought of heaven as a cosmic ocean, which if traversed must be done by ship. p57
- they held that the throne of Ra was situated on a divine ship p57

-Psalm 68:4 says God... rideth upon the heavens” p59

-the figures in Facs. 1 who face to the right all have to do with the death and evil, those who face to the left have to do with the saving of life, and good. p59

-Abraham in Facs. 1 is representative of God, the wicked priest represents Satan, these show the eternal conflict between good and evil, and this image invites us to look through the gates of heaven shown at the bottom of the figure, and into the very presence of God. We learn there that there is opposition in all things and that the righteous always win in the end. p59-60.

#### **Ch.4 Facsimile 2:**

-Similar findings to Facsimile 2 date back to 940 B.C. p63

-Nut called “bosom of the gods” was associated with the bee, it was the embodiment of the sacred city. There is a crown called dsr.t (deseret) with a bee on it the Egyptians wore.

-Facsimile 2 represents the principals of astronomy p65

-Joseph Smith translated the images not the text in the Facsimile 2, and said certain of them can only be understood in the temple. Joseph Smith was concerned with the part that was associated with Abraham not necessarily the message intended by the Egyptians. p65.

-Facsimile 2 is like an eye, associated with looking into the mind, hence here the idea of looking into the mind of God. p66

-The eye is dilated in Facs. 2, this is because compared to God we are in darkness. “Mine eyes are upon you” D&C 38:7. p66

-Facs. 2 represents the sun in its journey across the sky, hence recall the verse “follow the son with full purpose of heart” 2 Nephi 31:13. Those who do “shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father” Matthew 13:43. God is “in the light of the sun, and the light of the sun, and the power thereof by which it was made” D&C 88:7. p66

-Speaking of God, “All things are round about him; and he is... round about all things” D&C 88:41. There is an X on the God in the middle of the Facs. 2, showing X marks the spot, the center of the universe, a globe where God dwells (Facs. 2:1). p67

-Recall “thou hast taken Zion to thine own bosom, from all thy creations, from all eternity to all eternity” (Moses 7:31). Christ is “in the bosom of the Father, even from the beginning” (D&C 76:13). God sitting “upon his throne, who is in the bosom of eternity, who is in the midst of all things” (D&C 88:13). p67

-Scriptural references showing God is in the middle, and things gathering around him in a circle p67-8

-fig 1 of facs. 2 is a seated deity with two, or in other instances, four, ram heads. “He holds in his hands the symbols of life ([the] ankh), of dominion ([the] was), and stability ([the] djed)”. p68

-“god sitting at the enter of the hypocephalus [this round image which is the facs.], which represents the world” p68

-“depicted with four heads, this god united within himself the attributes of the gods Re (the sun), Shu (light), Geb (the earth), and Osiris (the next world and the resurrection), and represented the primeval creative force.” p68

-Joseph Smith was able to reconstruct part of the document which was damaged even though he had not seen another like this. What he reconstructed goes fairly well along with other ones similar to it that have been found (see other reference cited here of about 100 of these having been found). p69

-“one thing seems to be constant: there are at least two heads, and they are the ram looking into both of the dimensions of eternity.” p70

-“The ram, of course, is a symbol of virility, power, and resurrection.” p70

-“he is given four heads [in some other similar facsimiles which have been found], which not only signify the four cardinal directions but also effectively turn our flat facsimile into a sphere, in which he is the center.” p70

-“The ram-god Khnum (Amon-Ra or Osiris) was thought to be a potter, who fashioned man on a potter’s wheel.” p70

-“The word ram in all Semitic languages means high” (quotes Nibley), “and the ram in the highest place is “the most high””. p71

-“Among the myriad of names of this great god (Osiris) was the curious, “I am that I am.”” p71

-Jesus Christ says, “Listen to the voice of him who is from all eternity to all eternity, the Great I Am, even Jesus Christ.” (Doctrine and Covenants 39:1) p75 (\*see also the Old Testament Exodus 3:14 Jehovah says “I am that I am”).

-“Ptah-Seker-Osiris (representing “triune god of the resurrection:” “embodied three gods in one, principals of Ptah the “great god who came into being in the beginning” and Seker associated with death and Osiris “the resurrected one and the giver of everlasting life”) was the Egyptian Logos through whom and by whom the world are made...creator of gods and men... who illuminates the worlds.” A symbol of how Christ embodies the power of creation, of power over death, etc. p71-75

-The length of a cubit was an arms length. The arm held up to the square was called the cubit. “The cubit, represented by the squared arm...associated with the idea of embracing, or “folding in the arms”...formed part of the rites of initiation.” p73

-“the cubit was also the symbol of Maat, “the embodiment of truth and justice, kingship and social order.” p73

-“The Khnum (the god represented by fig 1 in facs. 2 with the ram head) figure is God at the center of the universe possessing all power, truth, and glory. He is the divine father and the generator of all things. Because this god was such a conglomerate of gods, it is interesting to discover that he is actual a council of gods. “He (Osiris) is the leader of the gods... who commands the Great Council (in heaven)” (quotes Nibley)” p73

-Speaking of more insight on this facsimile, reading in the Pearl of Great Price speaks of symbolism here of “Kolob, signifying the first creation, nearest to the celestial, or the residence of God. First in government, last pertaining to the measurement of time. The measurement according to celestial time, which celestial time signifies one day to a cubit. One day in Kolob is equal to a thousand years according to the measurement of this earth, which is called by the Egyptians Jah-oh-eh” (from explanation of Fig 1 in The Pearl of Great Price) p73.

- “Kolob...signifies the first great grand governing fixed star which is the farthest that ever has been discovered by the fathers which was discovered by Methusela and also by Abraham” p74
- “The intelligences, the record discloses, are organized in the same way as the planets. They are hierarchical, receiving light from those above and giving light to those below. In the scale of planets, one was greater than all the rest, and so it is with the intelligences. The great planet is Kolob and the great intelligence is Christ.” p74
- “Joseph Smith said “The past, the present, and the future were and are, with Him, one eternal ‘now’”.” p75
- “Like Ptah-Seker-Osiris, the Savior is literally the triune god of the resurrection (three in one), for His mission had three parts. His pre-earth life, as the Word or Logos of God, the Creator, the opener and beginner (see John 1:1-3, 14); His mortal and dying mission; and His resurrection.” p76
- “Like Ptah-Seker-Osiris coming forth from the heavenly city of Heliopolis, the Savior has come down to us from that great city of the Heavenly Jerusalem, which is in the “bosom” of eternity, and he desires for us to inherit it with him (see D&C 38:4; Moses 7:31, 47, 69).” p76
- “Like Ptah-Seker-Osiris, the Savior is the illuminator of worlds (see D&C 88:7-13)” p76
- “Ptah-Seker-Osiris is portrayed as being “without father” and “without mother.” This is surely an attempt to link the god with priesthood, for it is actually the Priesthood after the Order of the Son of God, that is “without father, without mother” (Hebrews 7:3), and “without beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity” (Alma 13:7 in The Book of Mormon). p76
- lists holy things constructed to the measurement of the temple and gives biblical references to Noah’s ark, ark of the covenant of Moses, city of the New Jerusalem, Tabernacle of Moses, temple in the vision of Ezekiel and temple of Solomon, etc. p77
- “We learn in the explanation to Figure 1 of Facsimile 2 that one day with the Lord, which is a thousand years of our time, is to Him equal to one cubit. This equates time and distance. In some manner, a thousand years of time is equal to eighteen inches of distance. Could that mean that when we lived with the Lord in heaven we lived in an environment so advanced that in the time it took for us to move the distance of one cubit... a thousand years according to the mortal time would have passed? This would mean that in coming to earth, we are on an accelerated, fast-forward merry-go-round, and that the whole thing passes with God in the twinkling of an eye. And when we return to heaven, it will appear as if we had hardly been gone at all.” p77
- speaking of Fig 2 of Facs. 2, “This is Amon-Re, the chief god of the Egyptian pantheon; the two heads illustrate the hidden and mysterious power of Amon (his name in Egyptian means the Hidden One) combined with the visible and luminous power of Re.” p78
- “This figure now represents him on the move. In this second part of a heavenly drama, He becomes Logos, the Firstborn of heaven, the “Divine Word, by whom all things were made, and who though from God, was God,” “the first person after himself (god) uncreated, infinite, ruling over all things that were made by him,” “the Second One...produced from the First One...called forth for the avowed purpose of creating and governing all things; associating to ‘Messiah,’” “the love which the Divine Principle conceives for the first product of its will,” and “the eternal generation of the Son of God...the Eternal Sonship” It is Amon, the supreme god of Thebes, identified with Ra, the Sun, under the name of Amon-Ra.” p79

-“Two heads represent the rising and setting sun. He is the Hidden One, “the personification of the hidden and unknown creative power...associated with the ...primeval...god in the creation of the world and all that is in it.” p79

-“Amon means ‘what is hidden’ or that which is not seen and not known.” p79 (\*so we see that the hidden (God the Father) are represented in Ra, the sun, which points us to Jesus Christ the son of God, coming to earth “in the express image and likeness of his father” ( see Heb. 1:3; see also 2 Cor. 4:4; Col. 1:15 and Elder Holland General Conference talk 2003 “The Grandeur of God” at <https://www.lds.org/general-conference/2003/10/the-grandeur-of-god?lang=eng>) doing the things he would do, saying the things he would say (see McConkie “the Mortal Messiah”)

-(“After generations of prophets had tried to teach the family of man the will and the way of the Father, usually with little success, God in His ultimate effort to have us know Him, sent to earth His Only Begotten and perfect Son, created in His very likeness and image, to live and serve among mortals in the everyday rigors of life.” Elder Holland General Conference talk 2003 “The Grandeur of God” at <https://www.lds.org/general-conference/2003/10/the-grandeur-of-god?lang=eng>).

-Two feathered crown also represented being able to comprehend the future and the past. It’s said of Christ He “who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity” (Mosiah 3:5 Book of Mormon) p80

-Ankh in his hand (fig 2 facs. 2) shows “I will commit thy government into his hand...and the key of the house of David will I lay upon his shoulder; so he shall open, and none shall shut; and he shall shut, and none shall open” (Isa. 22:21-211). The Prophet Joseph Smith terms this “holding the key of power.” p80-81.

-“As Amon-Ra, he [Christ] is the Divine Word of the Father, the Logos, who goes forth in first person as if he is the Father, “the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning” (Mosiah 3:18) “And his name is called The Word of God” (Revelation 19:13).” p81

-Feathers of the crown symbolize Maat, the truth, which is two truths, past and future “Truth is knowledge of things as they are, and as they were, and as they are to come” (See D&C 93:24) see also Rev. 1:8, John 14:6, and D&C 93:26) p81

-Elder Orson Pratt said “What is the name of God in the pure language? The answer says ‘Ahman.’ What is the name of the Son of God? Answer, ‘Son Ahman’. (Journal of discourses, 2:342-43). In Egypt is is also spelled Amen Amon or Amun. Ahman is revealing himself through his son as Son Ahman. Ra means sun, so Amon-Ra means sun of God. Malachi says “Sun of righteousness” referring to Christ (Malachi 4:2) and Nephi uses this but with the word son, “Son of Righteousness” (2 Nephi 26:9 The Book of Mormon). The Egyptians called the part of God that is hidden “Amon” and the part of God that is manifest “Ra”. p82

-fig 3 of facs 2: “the figure is a hawk headed Ra with a sun disk on his head”. “Wedjat-eye on either side of him...symbolic of light and protection.” “he holds the Was-scepter, symbol of dominion, and in from on him is an altar with a lotus blossom on it.” “Ra seated in his bark represents the sun in its daily journey across the sky and symbolizes resurrection and rebirth, since the sun was thought to die and be reborn each day.”

-An ancient Egyptian writing says, “I have come into thee. My heart watcheth, my head is equipped with the White Crown. I act as the guide of the celestial beings. I make to flourish terrestrial beings. There is joy of heart for the Bull, and for the celestial beings, and for the company of the Gods. I am the god, the Bull, the Lord of the gods... I have moored my boat to the tying-up post in the lakes of the celestial beings” p83



-Another ancient Egyptian passage, “They prepare a path for me, even I who moor with those who are in the Sky and earth. I will sit down, turn around, take my seat, and appear in my flaming glory...I have seen my father face to face.” p83

-Another ancient Egyptian text said to the dead, “Welcome to the fannies (temple)! You are clad in the pure garment of Ptah, in the robe of Hathor. Spacious is your seat in the Bark; you sit in the Ship of God. Fair is your rising like the rising of Ra, you shine like Hathor” p83

-Another ancient Egyptian text by the deified king, “...I control; none being near my throne in the divine ship; I am in control, not being without a boat, my throne being the divine ship at Heliopolis” p84

-The Prophet Joseph Smith said the thing on his head is “a crown of eternal light upon his head; representing the grand Key-words of the Holy Priesthood, as revealed to Adam in the Garden of Eden, as also to Seth, Noah, Melchizeded, Abraham, and all to whom the Priesthood was revealed (Explanation: Figure 3)”.

-“...extol him that rideth upon the heavens ” (Psalms 68:4); “To him that rideth upon the heavens of heavens...doth send out his mighty voice” (Psalms 68:33); “And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Sbraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out” (Heleman 3:30 The Book of Mormon). p84

-“The implication is that God, Abraham (who is a god), and the traveler (who is becoming a god) will all sit together in the throne-boat.” p84-85.

-The crown of Lower Egypt is worn by the pharaohs it has a bee on it which belongs to Osiris. The bee in Egyptian is “dsrt” (Deseret). This teaches that, like how the bee polinates the flowers, the gods are planters going forth to create new worlds.

-There is Atum (Adam) in a boat in certain Egyptian images (shown in the text). The boat rests on a symbol which suggests the vault of heaven. This suggests that Adam’s boat is a celestial one. In front of Adam is the sign for follower, meaning he is “following Osiris”. In front of him is also the “eye of Horus” which represents the office of seer. It is “key to the measurement of all things and hence to all knowledge.” p87

-Speaking of ships, Brigham Young: ” God is at the helm. This is the mighty ship Zion.” and President Heber C. Kimball: “[Of the Zion of Enoch] God took them and their city...and they sailed away like one ship at sea separating from another”. Hebrew word for Zion means “the ship of the city of light”. Strongs Exoustive Concordance of the Bible says that the following describe the word Zion: “to glitter from afar” “a bright object at a distance traveling towards” and being in “splendor, brilliant continually, to the most distant point of view.” Idea of a ship suggests transplanting things among worlds. (See also Ogden’s Verse by Verse of Old Testament Vol. 1 for into about Adam getting put on this earth from another one, general authorities quotes thereon Brigham Young and others. ) p87

-In Facs. 2 we see bird on a boat in Fig. 4; The Horus Hawk is said to be 1000 cubits long, and that he sails a ship into the stairway of fire. His ship is called “the ship of 1000 cubits long”. The god rides this ship to a place and when it’s work is done there is sails away to another place. This deals with death, but the way it’s put here is positive. Wings show increase, boat on great waters shows expansive heavens, depicts moment of resurrection when all things are new.

-The cow Hathor has the hr in its name, like Horus. Horus is thought to be the substance of the sun, and so Hathor is thought to be the mother of Horus, or the mother of the sun. By her the sun is reborn each day. She personifies the original waters from which all creation came into being. Woman behind the cow holding the

lotus flower symbolizes resurrection. The necklace of the cow represents “the persistence of life, durability, ever-renewed youth” these are nourishing principals, caring for the royal line. Joseph Smith refers to this as one of the governing planets which gets it’s light from Kolob. The high horns of the cow hold the sun disk, so the cow is the source of global and local light, being the sun itself, and nourishing the princes with light giving milk which enables them to become true kings. The woman behind the cow has a circle over her head, this shows she is the sun. It shows she is giving life and power to the sun. She is making the cow fertile. The idea of the sun getting its light from another source is shown in how science shows that the sun does generate light from nuclear reactions within itself, but mostly from accretion (increase by external addition), mostly of hydrogen from a distant mass that has come into the gravitational pull of the sun. The woman who has the circle over the head has a dilated eye. This suggests she is the bringer of light since the eye reacts with light. “She is the bringer of a fulness of power and glory from above.” Ra says, “I am he who opens his eyes and causes light to be, and if he closes his eyes makes markness.” (See Nibley “One Eternal Round” lecture 11). This woman was the Widget-eye. The idea of binding and loosing is suggested in all of this as well. p89-92

-Temperatures get hotter as you go past the sun into space. Heat flows from hot to cold, so we reason that the primary heat source is not the sun, but a center beyond the sun that is flowing toward the sun. p92 (Science and Mormonism by Cook).

-The vases in Facs. 2 represent leaf, lion, and lamb or ram. Shows a cycle of death where intervention is needed, for the lamb eats the leaf, the lion eats the lamb, the leaf eats the lion (as it decomposes it becomes a leaf). p94

-In Fig. 7 of Facs. 2, the one on the chair “represents Min, the god of the regenerative, procreative forces of nature”. (Later the text shows this as being the scene of the Garden of Eden). The bird giving him the Wedjat Eye is sometimes depicted to be like a snake. It’s said of Min “Thou art the beautiful prince, who risest like the sun with the white crown, and thou art the Lord of radiant light and the creator of brilliant rays.” (Budge, Gods of the Egyptians). Min-Amon wears the crown of Amon. Min is the god of the raised arm, he is receiving divine powers and attributes as well as giving commitment precedent to such power. Min means holy of holies. p95-97

-In Fig. 7 of Facs. 2 the symbol by the feet of the person on their is of arms held up high, and 2 jackals. The image is like the word “ka” which means “the intelligence, essential nature, or life-force of the deceased”. When the Ka sign has 3 strokes beside it which is to say it three times, it signifies “words of power”. The jackal head means “to be strong, to be mighty”. When used three times it means mighty powers and is seen as a “badge or insignia of might or potency”. The jackal was thought of as a guide, the god Anubis, chief of wisdom and time and chief judge and master. One of his names Wepwawet means “the opener of the ways”. “His office was to introduce the souls of the departed into the divine hidden land. There being three of these suggests the three aspects of time being past present and future. Kau and jackal (useru) are forged together to mean a “judgement and wisdom which open the way into the dimensions of eternity.” p95-99

-In Fig. 7 of Facs. 2 Joseph Smith says this “represents God sitting upon his throne, reavealing through the heavens the grand Key-words of the Priesthood; as, also, the sign of the Holy Ghost unto Abraham, in the form of a dove.” p98-99

– In Fig. 7 of Facs. 2 the man has a tail of a hawk, which suggests descending and ascending. This shows “God...revealing through the heavens, power, covenants, and key words as they are revealed by the Holy Ghost.” p99

-In Fig. 7 of Facs. 2 the arms of the dove are in the shape of the Ka, and he is giving the eye. The Ka and the eye together: “Together they show the principle of giving and receiving a fulness of all things, coupled with the idea of embracing.”

-In depictions similar to what we see in Fig. 7 of Facs. 2, there is a bar holding up the crown of Min. This suggests it is heavy. This goes well with the scripture D&C 132:16 speaking of “an exceeding, and an eternal wight of glory”.

-One depiction of Fig 6 of Facs 2 has a flower growing out from underneath the throne, suggesting water under the throne (\*like in the bible when it speaks of water coming out from under the temple). p93-94

-The pyramid texts speak of Atum (Adam) “O Atum-Khoprer (Adam The Ancient of Days) you set your arms about them as the arms of the ka-symbol, that your essence might be in them. O Atum, set your arms about the king... as the arms of a ka-symbol, that the king’s essence may be in it, enduring for ever” p99

-Fig 7 in Facs 2 the man with his arm to the square (the sign of a covenant) is on a man portrayed with power to be a father. God spoke to Noah in the Joseph Smith Translation (JST) of Genesis 8:23 saying that he would make Noah an inheritor of the covenant that was made to his fathers. We see Noah is to be a father. As part of the covenant, Zion comes from heaven and makes the “earth tremble with joy” because Zion comes down from heaven to be on earth. Joseph Smith said “This is why Adam blessed his posterity; he wanted to bring them into the presence of God. They looked for a city [“whose builder and maker is God.” (Heb. 11:10)] (Smith Teachings, 159). p100.

-Ankh symbol like sash around waist by umbilical cord “naval string”.

It showed the concept of taking an oath. Bind is the same as seal. This is the idea that one swears by his life that if it’s broken he dies also. See also water of life umbilical cord parallelisms. p102

-Ankh is shaped like a key. Represents ascending through veil into eternal realms, sphere of the gods.

-They had sacred king names they wrote on a cloth showing them tied to the realm of the gods, tied to “all encircled by the sun.”

-Fig. 8 of Facs. 2 the god is asked to grand Ankh to the should of the Osiris Shishaq (Sheshonq). Same as taking upon us Christ’s name as there taking upon oneself Orsis’s name. p103

-Alma 40:1 Spirits go to god once death of the body occurs

-D&C 132:64 “I will magnify my name upon all those who receive and abide in my law.”

-Osiris gives Ankh to a king, recall Mosiah 18:13 “may he grant unto you eternal life.”

-The Ankh symbol is a composition of 3 signs: a hand of giving, water sign of washing or cleansing, and the placenta sign of birth and renewal. p102

“I will commit the government into his hand” Isaiah 22:21-22 pertains to this.

“Melchizedek Priesthood is to hold the keys of all the spiritual blessings of the church” D&C 107:18.

“Receive this oath and covenant of my father” D&C 84:40.

“Taketh hold of my covenant” Isaiah 56:6

The cartouche also signifies how “his course is one eternal round” Alma 37:12. see p105

-Fig 17 and 16 of Facs 2 read “May this tomb never be desecrated, and may this soul and its possessor never be desecrated in the Netherworld” similarly we give Priesthood dedication of a grave. Christ controls hell “who controllst and subjectest the devil, and the dark and benighted dominion of Sheol (hell)” D&C121:4. p107

-Fig 18 of Facs 2 the writing around the edge says “I am Djabty (God Osiris) in the House of the Benben (holy of holies) in Heliopolis (the heavenly Jerusalem), so exalted and glorious. [I am] a procreative bull (sire or father) without equal. [I am] that mighty God in the House of Benben in Heliopolis... that Mighty God” p108

-“Come to Osiris, (name of the person), grant thou that she become like one amng thy followers. She is a God who is in the temple of the grand old man in Heliopolis” says another version of the text (see Nibley One Eternal Round lec. 3). So we see it teaches of how the person is becoming a god through the temple of the ancient of days. p109

-Joseph Smith said that the Lord “set the ordinances to be the same forever and ever, and set Adam to watch over them, to reveal them from heaven to man, or to send angels to reveal them” (Smith Teachings, 168) p110

-There are Egyptian images showing the union of the heavenly Heliopolis and the early one. p 111

-Another part of the sign of the Heliopolis is that of a circle with cross roads, symbolizing the gathering of the people from the four parts of the earth to a central location. p111

-facs. 2 fig. 19-20 translated “you will be as that God, the Busirian (Osiris). Busiris was a cult center of Osiris in the Delta and was thus used as an epithet of Osiris.” One text speaking of this says, “stand up, and sit thou upon the throne of Osiris” and “beautiful and great are these things which thy father Osiris hath done for thee. He hath given thee his throne.” Also, “(Osiris) appeared to man not only as the god and judge of the dead, but also as the creator of the world and of all things in it. He who was the son of Ra became the equal of his father, and he took his place side by side with him in heaven.” p112

-3 Nephi 28:10 in The Book of Mormon, “ye shall have fulness of joy; and he shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one.”

-Joseph Smith said “Although the earthly tabernacle is laid down and dissolved, they shall rise again to dwell in everlasting burnings in immortal glory...(and) they shall be heirs of God and joint heirs with Jesus Christ. What is it? To inherit the same power, the same glory and the same exaltation, until you arrive at the station of a God, and ascend the throne of eternal power, the same as those who have gone before. What did Jesus do? Why, I do the things I saw my Father do when worlds came rolling into existence. My Father worked out his kingdom with ear and trembling, and I must do the same; and when I get my kingdom, I shall present it to my Father, so that he may obtain kingdom upon kingdom, and it will exalt him in glory. He will then take a higher exaltation, and I will take his place, and thereby become exalted myself. So that Jesus treads in the tracks of his Father, and inherits what God did before; and God is thus glorified and exalted in the salvation and exaltation of all his children. It is plain beyond disputation, and you thus learn some of the first principles of the gospel, about which so much hath been said.” (Smith, History of the Church, 6:306) p113

-Enoch spoke of inheritance with Christ, “Thou hast made me, and given unto me a right to thy throne, and not of myself, but through thine own grace.” (Moses 7:59) p113

-There are serpents on either side of the god in the middle of Facs. 2, fig. 1. These are the Sata serpents. “I am the serpent Sata whose years are many. I die and am born each day...I die and I am born again, and I renew myself, and I grow young each day”. This was a symbol of divinity and royalty (\*for text on how Satan uses the

sign of the serpent to immigrate a godly thing, see Ogden Verse by Verse Old Testament Vol. 1). These were also called Uraei, and the “the god Ra wore two urea upon his forehead.” “Every king is represented with at least one Uraeus upon his forehead.” p114

-The apes on either side of the god seated in Facs. 2 Fig. 1 are Isis and Nephthys. They provide what the head lacketh. They are ‘eternity’ and ‘everlastingness.’ Eternity is the day, and Everlastingness is the night”. p114-115

-Osiris says, “I am the keeper of the volume of the book (the Register or Tablet of Destiny) of the things which have been made, and of the things which shall be made...the things which have been made are Eternity, and the things which shall be made are Everlastingness, and that Eternity is the Day, and Everlastingness the Night.” p115

-Nibley teaches that Nephthys and Isis are emblems of spirit and truth. p115

-“The two exceedingly great urea are upon the head of the god. Their names are Millions of Years and Traverser of Millions of Years and Begetter of Millions of Years. They are the two shining spirits. p115

-These also represent nursing nursing mothers who together embrace the king says Nibley. p115

-They possess magical powers and Urt-Hekau (mighty one of words of power). p115

-they also symbolize two Maat (truth) goddesses. Nephthys a name expressly signifying the “end of anything.” Isis symbolized birth, growth, development, and giver, Mephphthys was a “type of decay death diminution and immobility.” Isis represented the part of the world that is visible, while Nephthys represents that which is invisible. Some call Isis day and Nephthys night. They represent things that are and things that will be. p115

-They are called “the guardians who give judgement”. p116

-“Nephthys...although a goddess of death, she was associated with the coming into existence of the life that springs from death.”

-Nephthys and Isis “assisted at the resurrection of Osiris”. “In all ages, they together aided the deceased to rise to the new life by means of the words which they chanted over his bier.” p116

-Isis says, “I have granted that thou mightiest be as a god”. “I am that which is[,] has been, and shall be, and no man has lifted my veil” p116

-They are the two pylons at the entrance of every temple (Nibley, The Message of the Joseph Smith Papyri, 116) p116

-They are the two truths in the Hall of the Judgement of Osiris. p116-117

-Isis is the wife of Osiris, and Nephthys is the wife of Set.

-They are also called Rekhti goddesses. Tern rekh means to know, to be wise, to be acquainted with. p117

-“Osiris was said to be arrayed in apparel, which had been specially woven for him by the two Rekhti goddesses.” p117

-The names of Isis and Nephthys are written with the determinative of two eyes, and they are “one.” p117

-The dead say “I have gone up in Pe to the Souls of Pe, I am girt with the girdle of Horus, I am clad with the garment of Thoth, Isis is before me and Nephthys is behind me (\*recal protection of Jehovah before and in front of his hosts), Wepwawet opens the way for me, Shu lifts me up, the Souls of On set up a stairway for me in order to reach Above, and Nut puts her hand on me just as she did for Osiris on the day when he died.” (\*may suggest women’s role in resurrection etc.) p117

-Isis and Nephthys can represent the mind of God. They can represent the wings of a hen, as Jehovah has said he will gather the people as a hen her chickens if they would let him. They are perfectly represented in the two cherubims on the ark of the covenant. “he sitteth between the cherubims” (Psalm 99:1). p118

-“Cherub, in Hebrew signifies fulness of knowledge...God is supposed to sit on the mercy-seat whose face the angels in heaven always behold and upon whom their eyes are fixed to observe and receive his commands” p118-119

-The apes may suggest that they are creatures holding up their arms to the first light of day, the sunlight, after a cold desert night “as if worshipping the sun at it’s rising.” p119

-“The idea is that the king is to go to the temple and find the place where Isis (all eternity future) and Nephthys (all eternity past) are ‘playing’. The Egyptian word hab translated here as playing has the alternate meanings of combined, joined, united, or embraced.” p119

-Mirrors in the (LDS) temples suggest repetition of eternity as suggested above. This suggests that the couple sealed (married) at the temple alters may be together not only for eternity but through the eternities. p120.

-Joseph Smith knew more about these Facsimiles than was published. “the above translation is given as far as we have any right to give at the present time.” he said. (See Explanation page of these in The Pearl of Great Price.) p123

-More text around the Facsimile 2 reads “ “I am Djabyt (God Osiris) in the House of the Benben (holy of holies) in Heliopolis (the heavenly Jerusalem), so exalted and glorious. I am a verily bull (sire or father) without equal. I am that mighty God in the House of Benben in Heliopolis...[Carry away, carry away, (in the) two arms upon his breast, being wrapped...the Book of Breathings, being written according to what is] his words, that Mighty God in Heliopolis.” p123

-The Book of Breathings had the same general purpose as the hypocephalus (the Facs. 2), and had the key words in it. They contained things as they really are (truths). It was to be secret, and held close to the heart in wrapped arms. Such is where Joseph Smith found the Facsimiles of the Book of Abraham.

-God knows the stars by name “he calleth them by their names” (Psalm 147:4). p124

-When God calls the heavens, they stand up together, “mine right hand hath spanned the heavens: when I call unto them, they stand up together” (Isaiah 48:13)

-(For more on stars and the Facsimiles, see Pearl of Great Price, or “The Kolob Theorem”)

-The upper regions of the Facs. 2 represent the daytime (they have the heaven, resurrection, and garden of Eden in them represented). The lower regions represent the night (they include the part that represents the telestial kingdom, or this earth we now live on)

-Brigham Young said “the earth was framed...near the throne of our Father in heaven. And when man fell the earth fell into space, and took up its abode in this planetary system, and the sun became our light. When the Lord said, ‘Let there be light,’ there was light, for the earth was brought near the sun that it might reflect upon it so as to give us light by day, and the moon to give us light by night.” p126

-This is the order of the parts of Facs. 2 in order to hear the Plan of Salvation: 1 2 3 7 5 6 4. They are as follows in that order: Divine power center (Celestial), Creative Power (Creation), Garden of Eden (Terrestrial), The Earth where we live and die (Telestial), Resurrection (Terrestrial) which brings us back to Celestial. p126

-Temples often have the baptismal font in their center to represent the divine center. We pass through the gates of baptism to take the journey through eternity. Leaving the font, one enters the creation room. Here he views the creation of earth and all things on the face of it. The initiate views Adam one who helped create the earth and Eve his wife, and they are instructed and make covenants with God before they are cast out of Eden. Facs. 2: Fig. 3 says that these are “revealed to Adam in the Garden of Eden” p127

-Alberta Temple floor plan has baptismal font in middle, creation room in east side where the sun rises, then the garden of Eden to the south, then the telestial kingdom to the west where the sun sets since it’s there that all things do die. Then the resurrection, aka the Terrestrial Kingdom, is in the north part of the temple. Then you go back to the center of the temple. p128-129

-The Facsimiles of the Book of Abraham are like getting a Liahona, as we like Lehi are astonished at them and learn how to interpret them (1 Nephi 16:10). p129

-Liahona in Hebrew means “to Jehovah is light” and suggests being lead by Jehovah. L means to; iah means Jehovah in abbreviated form; ona or on means light, and suggests the city of light. p130

### **Ch.5 Facs. 3:**

-This is Abraham on the throne of Pharaoh in Egypt teaching the people the principals of astronomy, using such as a way to introduce them the the gospel. The people thought Abraham was Osiris since Pharaoh, whom they considered to be a god, let him sit on his throne. (see Explanation to Facs. 3 in The Pearl of Great Price).

-In one depiction of this in Egypt, there is a man is brilliant white approaching the throne.

– In another depiction of this same event, “Osiris sits enthroned in a sacred shrine flanked by two pillars with a wrapped cloth, symbolizing that the entrance into his presence is based on the principle of wrapping or enfolding or embracing”. p133

-In the image of the candidate coming to the throne of Osiris, is is shown that the candidate is reverencing all of the major gods, showing that he has obeyed the laws that these gods represent. He also has an offering table before him representing the sacrifices he has made for obedience. p133

-Osiris on the throne has truth behind him as we see by the person behind him, and truth in front of him as seen by the person in front of him. These persons represent truth in Egyptian. He is also wearing a crown of truth and speaking words of truth. There is also a lotus flower before him representing that he is the light (and that there is living water flowing out from underneath his throne see book of Zechariah) p133-4

-Osiris is wearing the Atef crown the holiest of crowns, representing the most spiritual of gods. “Osiris... is the leader of the gods...who commands the Great Council (in heaven)” (See Nibley here cited) p134

- The whip in his hand shows “power, bestirring all things to life and action.” (\* we may infer reasoning for gods’ punishments here.)
- The Atef crown is in the shape of the sun, shining rays of light to the person who wears it. p135
- Joseph Smith found hieroglyphics with writings of Abraham as well as Joseph in Egypt. p136
- Joseph Smith taught that the 4 figures in the image show the four quarters of the earth, and that person on the throne represents Jesus Christ keeping Satan from devouring the four quarters of the earth. p137
- The Atef crown symbolizes Ra (the top God which represents Elohim), then the feathers on either side represent Atum (Adam) who helped in the creation, and Ptah, who represents Jehovah. p137-9
- Elder Mark E. Peterson of the Quorum of the Twelve said “Brigham Young taught that Adam, or Michael, assisted Deity in the creation of the world. He said, ‘ It is true that the earth was organized by three distinct characters, namely, Elohim, Yahovah, and Michael, these three forming a quorum’ Then he distinguished these three from the Holy Trinity, as he spoke in the same paragraph defining ‘the Deity, as Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.” (Journal of Discourses, 1:51)
- Joseph Smith called Michael Jehovah and Elohim the in Heaven, but he called the Elohim Jehovah and The Holy Ghost the Grand Council of Heaven. p139
- In the Coffin texts Osiris (Ptah) says “So says Osiris. You shall see me in my great Atef-crowns which Ra gave to me and which Atum...made firm for me.” p139
- Abraham “began his teaching, ‘Blessed be God who created the sun, the moon, and the planets’” (see Nibley referenced here). p140
- Abraham and Pharaoh were rivals, but seeing that Abraham could not be slain as he was set free from the altar of sacrifice by the angel of the Lord (Abraham 1:7, 12, 15, 20), the people thought that he was a god with power over death. The only god with power over death to them was Osiris! Abraham was allowed to sit on the throne of Pharaoh and teach the people. The people considered the Pharaoh to be a god, and that what he said was flawless. Letting Abraham sit on that throne and teach the people says a lot about what they thought of him. The Pharaoh was announcing to the people by this act that Abraham’s words were true. (\*This shows that Abraham was sent to the Egyptians the same reason as every prophet, to bear witness of The Redeemer, The Resurrection, of Jesus Christ!) p141-142
- In Facs. 3, there is a black person, who was a slave, and there was a one of the king’s waiters. This shows that the gospel is for everyone. p144
- The pharaoh was the greatest ruling power in the whole world, and from his throne were the words of truth going forth by Abraham. Notice the stars above the heads of the people, suggesting the divinity of this event. p144
- Abraham’s story in Egypt was preserved by these facsimiles, and they were put inside coffins, etc. p145
- The Lotus flower, which follows the light across the sky, is open towards the man on the throne. p145
- ” 13 And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same



might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.” (Mosiah 3:13 The Book of Mormon) p146

-” 17 Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his (Jesus Christ’s) coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

18 Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.” (Helaman 8:17-18)

### **Summary:**

-The need for sacrifice: see 3 Ne.9:20; D&C 132:50; D&C 97:8

-The gift of seeing: see D&C 76:12; D&C 136:32; 2 Ne. 32:5; D&C 88:67

-The Promise of Kingship: see D&C 59:2; 1 Peter 5:4; D&C 81:6; D&C 78:15; D&C 121:46; Rev. 3:21 (Who overcomes sits with Christ on his throne as he sits with his Father on his throne).

-Abraham “shows that if a man would attain to the keys of the kingdom of an endless life; he must sacrifice all things” (Joseph Smith: Teachings, 322)

-“And the Lord said unto me: Now, Abraham...behold thine eyes see it; it is given unto thee to know.” (Abraham 3:6)

-“Abraham...as Isaac also and Jacob did none other things than that which they were commanded; and because they did none other things than that which they were commanded, they have entered into their exaltation, according to the promises, and sit upon thrones, and are not angels but are gods.” (D&C 132:37). See also D&C 132:49.

-“Go ye, therefore, and do the works of Abraham; enter ye into my law and ye shall be saved.” (D&C 132:32)

## **ASSORTED PLAN OF SALVATION STUDIES**

## Joshua Erickson on God's Continuous Covenant

A lecture from the Mormon Renegade Podcast. Some of these ideas are not mainstream, but are certainly worthy of attention, as they are an attempt to understand teachings of scripture and modern prophets. Aspects of the law of Moses to return as a more complete Christianity are a big part of this lecture.

[https://youtu.be/5rG\\_rRL0aH8](https://youtu.be/5rG_rRL0aH8)

Bill of rights doesn't give us anything, it limits the government from taking what is inherently ours.

The constitution doesn't need to be changed because it's based on the long ago discovered truth of the nature of man, which is the desire to rule over one another in tyranny. It's about negative liberties.

Old testament folks not saved by animal sacrifice, but by the Messiah also. The sacrifice was to make them clean. Sin offering is better translated as purity offering.

Anything required of God's people in one generation or dispensation would be required in the other there will be a return of animal sacrifice and baptism has been needed from the beginning and always will be  
Anything required by way of priesthood and ordinances from the beginning of the Earth and the fullness of the Gospel is required all the way through this is the meaning of God being the same yesterday today and forever Joseph Smith was not just to restore a few things he was restoring all things

Any new scripture must terminize with old scripture because God is the same forever

Send me the logos is fulfilled to send Christ but fulfilled has several meanings it could mean I did it I made it work

He fulfilled all righteousness does that mean he did away with righteousness or that he performed it

He did the whole lot and showed us what the law meant.

He reminded us that the law was pointing to him and to not be overly concerned with the legal minutia.

The Book of Mormon is the most correct book this is not mean is a perfect book It was translated into English and that is difficult so the passage about animal sacrifice going away forever is not congruent with what we know the sons of Levi and doing it offering Joseph's temple complex including one temple for the Levites and many teachings of Ezekiel and others of last days of sacrifice and of God being unchanging etc.

The Bible is not a perfect translation where it says a bishop must be the husband of one wife that could be translated differently such as the husband must be married to a wife he needs to be able to show that he can handle a relationship not someone who is single so you see this is not outlaw the law of plural marriage.

Offer up to me no more the shedding of blood this could be translated as offer up to me no greater than the shedding of blood thus it is not a Prohibition. It means you can do no greater shedding of blood than what I've done.

You hear these Sunday school lessons about what the law of Moses is. They scare you off by claiming it is all the rabbinic traditions. Not so.

Some rabbinic traditions are good and useful, just don't mistake them as commandment.

Celebrating religious holidays can unite us as a nation and unite the various religious sects.

Israel was 12 nations with their own culture. They would get together at holy days to focus on the basics, then return back to their own nations. It's a perfect example for the United States. We are to be separate states, just with some interconnected highways for commerce etc. Each state should be allowed to have its own way rather than federal overreach trying to get us to all be the same. Let states try things out and see who succeeds and who fails.

Jesus did not say you can eat whatever you want the law specifically says do not eat pig etc Jesus was saying things

you eat without washing your hands is fine because the washing hands was not part of the law

Whoever teaches you to break the smallest commandment is the least in the Kingdom of heaven

Note Jacob vidrine suggests that animal sacrifice is adamic covenant not Mosaic law that animal sacrifice will return in that way because the law of Moses is done away

Jacob also says

IMO the Lord can suspend the practice of certain laws and ordinances based on the circumstances of the people -- e.g. plural marriage suspended among the early Nephites, circumcision and animal sacrifice suspended when Christ came to the Nephites, etc.

Jesus said think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets but I am come to fulfill

Do we see the scripture with Greek eyes or Hebrew eyes because we should see them with Hebrew eyes the Greeks saw God as someone who could change all the time it was by the whim it was not the rule of law but the Hebrews for them God was eternal and unchanging the same yesterday today and forever policies didn't just change all the time commandments didn't just change all the time

To fulfill means to do not to do away

Till heaven and Earth pass away all the law shall be fulfilled not one jot or tittle shall pass away until all is fulfilled

But does not that scripture suggest them stopping once they are fulfilled? Perhaps not perhaps having an earth must pass away etc

Ezekiel 22:23-28 defines ravaging wolves false prophets when you want to know what a word means go to where it was first used

The mark of a true prophet is that he will not contradict what the former prophets have said Joseph Smith taught you can tell if it's a false prophet cuz he'll contradict the prior one

They stoned Steven on false charges that he was changing the law of Moses or saying that Christ was these were paid for false witnesses he was not guilty of that

There is a test to see if the people are faithful wherein someone can do a miracle then they ask you to worship a different God or keep different commandments the test is to see if you'll reject that Deuteronomy 13 talks about this test

The way that Christianity is being presented the Jews are being righteous and rejecting it

In 2nd Peter there is a warning to not misunderstand the words of Paul as to mean that the law of Moses is not necessary

2 Peter 3 verse 15 it says beware of the wicked misinterpret Paul don't do that don't fall from your steadfastness One translation is don't get caught up in the error of lawlessness

Paul says we are saved by Jesus but the law still is important and will be blessed if we keep it

"Though thyself walkest orderly and keepest the law." Peter? Goes to temple to be Nazirite to show they keep the law of Moses still. Theres an uproar and accusations that he doesn't keep the law, the Romans show up and arrest him.

Nicean creed they wanted nothing to do with all things Jewish, all things Israelite.

No more Hebrew scriptures, everything to Greek. New calendar system. This was a huge part of the great apostasy.

The branches getting bigger than the roots this is a problem Jacob 5 addresses is when we forget our roots and make a whole new thing

Replace bacon and sausage with turkey bacon and turkey sausage.

The ironic goes with the Melchizedek just because you have the higher does not mean you do away with the lesser it's not that one is a curse and one is a blessing they're supposed to both be instituted at the same time the aaronic and Melchizedek things this is so that you have a good society so that if someone steals or kills etc you know what to do with them the plates of Moses the ten commandments it was said that they had the higher Melchizedek then those were destroyed and the lower ironic were given but this is not the case the first case was that both things were on the plates then those were destroyed and then the aaronic was rewritten and given. They were not cursed with the ironic priesthood they were cursed in that they were denied the melchizedek priesthood.

Contact Melissa with the zerahemla foundation to find out more about when the different Jewish holidays are and their celebrations of them













